



# OneTouch<sup>®</sup> Symphony<sup>™</sup>

*Insulin Delivery and  
Blood Glucose Monitoring  
System*



## Owner's Booklet



## Welcome

Congratulations. You have chosen one of the most advanced diabetes management systems available today. Your OneTouch® Symphony™ Insulin Delivery and Blood Glucose Monitoring System will play an integral part in the blood glucose management and continuous insulin delivery regimen that you have established with your health care professional.

Your OneTouch® Symphony™ System combines the functionality of an Animas® Insulin Pump and a OneTouch® Meter Remote through radio frequency (RF) communication. Both devices will work independently of one another, but using them together can provide you with options to help make insulin delivery more discreet and flexible.

Your Animas® Insulin Pump uses the latest advanced technology, providing continuous insulin delivery to help maintain your blood glucose targets as recommended by your health care professional. It delivers insulin in two ways: 1) continuous “basal” insulin delivery and 2) “bolus” insulin delivery to cover foods eaten and/or reduce a high blood glucose level.

Your OneTouch® Meter Remote combines the accuracy expected from OneTouch® products with features designed to make testing and tracking more convenient. These include a meter remote memory that serves as an electronic logbook for storing all your glucose test results along with other diabetes-related health records. Another new feature is a Food Database which can be easily accessed on your meter remote. The Food Database helps take the guesswork out of carb counting.

When the devices are used together, your OneTouch® Meter Remote gives you convenient remote access to insulin delivery functions available with the Animas® Insulin Pump. Your OneTouch® Symphony™ System also allows your most recent blood glucose results from the OneTouch® Meter Remote to be automatically entered into bolus insulin calculations to cover carbohydrates in food or to correct for a high blood glucose level.

This Owner’s Booklet is designed to provide the information that you are looking for, when you need it. We hope you keep it handy.

Of course you may still have questions. If you do, our customer service representatives will be happy to answer your call. You can reach them at Customer Service at 999-999-9999. You can also obtain information at [www.animascorp.com](http://www.animascorp.com).

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>BEFORE YOU BEGIN</b>	<b>I</b>
 <b>SECTION I : ANIMAS® INSULIN PUMP</b>	
<b>CHAPTER 1 - Important Information</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2 - Explanation of symbols</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Introduction to your Animas® Insulin Pump</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Getting your pump ready</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5 - Using the Normal Bolus feature</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6 - Using Basal Program features</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7 - Suspend/Resume feature</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8 - History feature</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9 - Status feature</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10 - Advanced features/Setup and activation</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11 - Using Advanced features</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>CHAPTER 12 - Care and maintenance</b>	<b>73</b>
<b>CHAPTER 13 - Safety system and alarms</b>	<b>75</b>
<b>CHAPTER 14 - Troubleshooting guidelines</b>	<b>85</b>
<b>CHAPTER 15 - Sick day guidelines</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>CHAPTER 16 - Lifestyle issues</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>CHAPTER 17 - My information</b>	<b>95</b>
<b>CHAPTER 18 - Warranty and other technical information</b>	<b>99</b>

## **SECTION II :     ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE**

<b>CHAPTER 1 - Setting up your OneTouch® Meter Remote</b>	<b>105</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2 - Setting up and using the Food Database</b>	<b>121</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Estimating bolus insulin amounts with the bolus calculator</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Testing your blood glucose</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5 - Adding comments to glucose test results</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6 - Making logbook entries</b>	<b>143</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7 - FastFacts® / Using your meter remote logbook</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8 - Control solution testing</b>	<b>159</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9 - Caring for your meter remote and test strips</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10 - Understanding meter remote error and other messages</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11 - Detailed information about your meter remote and test strips</b>	<b>171</b>

## **SECTION III:     ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM/USING YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE AND ANIMAS® INSULIN PUMP TOGETHER**

<b>CHAPTER 1 - Overview of your OneTouch® Symphony™ System</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2 - Establishing communication between your meter remote and your insulin pump</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3 - Pump Home and Meter Home screens on your meter remote</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4 - Insulin delivery functions on your meter remote</b>	<b>187</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5 - Checking the status of your OneTouch® Symphony™ System</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6 - Troubleshooting your OneTouch® Symphony™ System</b>	<b>207</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7 - OneTouch® Symphony™ System Communication Technical Specifications</b>	<b>217</b>

<b>Appendix A: Glossary</b>	<b>219</b>
-----------------------------	------------

<b>Index</b>	<b>223</b>
--------------	------------

## BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before using your OneTouch® Symphony™ System to deliver insulin, you must complete training with a certified Animas® Insulin Pump trainer on the insulin pump and on the meter remote.

As part of your training, your health care professional will assist you in making the appropriate selections for your insulin pump and meter remote settings. Your insulin pump must be programmed for your own personal use. Your insulin pump settings impact the calculations for insulin delivery using either your meter remote or insulin pump. Be comfortable with using your insulin pump before you activate the RF feature on your insulin pump and meter remote. See the appropriate chapters in *Section I*, pages 1–104 for the steps on setting up and using your insulin pump.

Many people also find it helpful to practice the blood glucose test process with control solution before testing with blood for the first time. See *Chapter 8* in *Section II*, pages 159–162.

For best results the use of your insulin pump, or your meter remote to access pump functions, is recommended for people with diabetes who are willing to:

- Test their blood glucose levels four to six times per day or as recommended by their health care team.
- Demonstrate adequate carbohydrate counting skills.
- Maintain good diabetes self-care skills.
- See their health care professional regularly.
- Have adequate vision and hearing to recognize the pump alerts.

You should carefully read this Owner's Booklet and any inserts that come with your OneTouch® Symphony™ System. These include inserts for:

- OneTouch® Ultra® Test Strips
- Food Database Reference Guide
- OneTouch® Ultra® Control Solution

and *Instructions for Use* for:

- Animas® 2000 Series Insulin Pump Cartridges
- Infusion Sets
- ezManager® Software

While reading this Owner's Booklet, please note the following:

- Display screens throughout the Owner's Booklet are examples only. They should not be considered suggestions for individual programming and may not be representative of current health states.
- "Blood Glucose" is often abbreviated as BG in both instructional copy as well as in example display screens.
- Your Animas® Insulin Pump will often be referred to as simply "your pump". Similarly, your OneTouch® Meter Remote will often be referred to as "your meter remote". "The devices" will often be used when referring to both the Animas® Insulin Pump and OneTouch® Meter Remote.

**Take special note of Warnings and Cautions throughout this Owner's Booklet, which are identified with .**

---

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN**

## Intended use

Your OneTouch® Symphony Insulin Delivery and Blood Glucose Monitoring System is indicated for the treatment of insulin-requiring diabetes and for the quantitative measurement of glucose in fresh capillary whole blood.

Your Animas® Insulin Pump is indicated for continuous subcutaneous infusion of insulin for the treatment of insulin-requiring diabetes.

Your OneTouch® Meter Remote Blood Glucose Monitoring System is intended to be used for the quantitative measurement of glucose in fresh capillary whole blood. When used together with the Animas® Insulin Pump, it also functions as a wireless (RF) remote control to deliver insulin from the pump. Your OneTouch® Meter Remote Blood Glucose Monitoring System is intended for use for self-testing outside the body (*in vitro* diagnostic use) by people with diabetes at home and by health care professionals in a clinical setting as an aid to monitor the effectiveness of diabetes control. Your OneTouch® Meter Remote Blood Glucose Monitoring System is specifically indicated for use on the finger, forearm or palm. It should not be used for the diagnosis of diabetes or testing of newborns.

## About radio frequency (RF) communication

Your meter remote and pump have built-in RF capability. RF is a type of wireless communication. Cell phones use RF technology, as do many other devices. RF is how your meter remote and pump communicate and share data.

The RF feature on your meter remote and pump will be deactivated when you first receive them. In order to begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system, RF must be activated on both devices and they must be paired (synchronized). Activating RF opens a line of communication on both devices and pairing ensures communication will take place only between one meter remote and one pump.

RF communication between your meter remote and pump will work up to a distance of about 10 feet and will transmit through clothing. Direct line of sight is not required for RF communication. As long as you have a good RF signal and are within range, you can use your meter remote to access pump functions.

When conditions or distance cause RF communication to be lost or interrupted, you will not be able to use your meter remote to access pump functions. This also means that data transfer between the two devices will stop temporarily. As soon as the problem is resolved, RF communication will resume. Any status records stored in your pump during the RF interruption will then be sent to your meter remote.

Your meter remote and pump are subject to and comply with U.S. Federal regulations, Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules regarding devices with RF capability. From these regulations, the two conditions of operation specific to your device are given in the following FCC required statement:

**This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: 1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and 2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.**

## BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Compliance with these guidelines means that under normal day-to-day circumstances your OneTouch® Symphony™ System should not affect the operation of other devices. Additionally, your OneTouch® Symphony™ System should operate normally in the presence of other devices in a normal household environment. **In the event there is interference from another device, it is recommended that you increase distance between your system and that device, or turn off the interfering device.**

**Alternatively, you may turn off RF communication between the meter remote and pump and perform insulin delivery functions directly from your pump (see Chapter 2 in Section III, pages 180-182).**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer (Animas Corporation) could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.




There are environments where it is recommended that you not use the RF communication feature linking your meter remote and pump. When you are in radiology and MRI departments and around radiology equipment, it is recommended you first deactivate the RF communication feature on both your meter remote and your pump. **Then you must remove both devices and leave them outside the MRI room. Any metal needle infusion sets should also be removed and left outside the MRI room.**

Likewise, during air travel your airline may have specific restrictions about using your System with RF communication activated. It is recommended that you deactivate the RF feature on your pump and meter remote during flights, or check with your airline's RF restrictions when making your travel plans. To learn more about deactivating the RF feature on your pump and meter remote, see Chapter 2 in Section III, pages 175–184.

Your pump has additional environmental restrictions. See Chapter 1 in Section I, pages 3–8 for recommendations regarding the use of pumps in the presence of radiology equipment.

## Using your meter remote and pump together as a system

Once you have established communication between your meter remote and pump, you can access certain pump functions directly from your meter remote. These include delivering a bolus, monitoring pump status, and confirming many pump alarms and warnings.

Your pump has its own set of display screens and buttons to provide stand-alone insulin delivery without the use of your meter remote. Some of the buttons work the same way as the buttons on your meter remote. One example is the  button on your pump. Like the  button on your meter remote, the  button on your pump is used to confirm entries. Be sure you know how the buttons work on both your pump and meter remote before you begin using the devices together as a system.

When you use your meter remote to access pump functions, your meter remote display screens will closely resemble your pump display screens.



**BEFORE YOU BEGIN****OneTouch® Symphony™ System Carton Contents**

Your OneTouch® Symphony™ System carton includes your insulin pump, your meter remote, and other accessories you will need to begin using both devices. Your meter remote and BG testing supplies are included within a separate kit within the carton. Check the contents of your carton to make sure all items are included. If any items are missing call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.

Your OneTouch® Symphony™ System carton includes:

- The Animas® Insulin Pump and pump accessories:

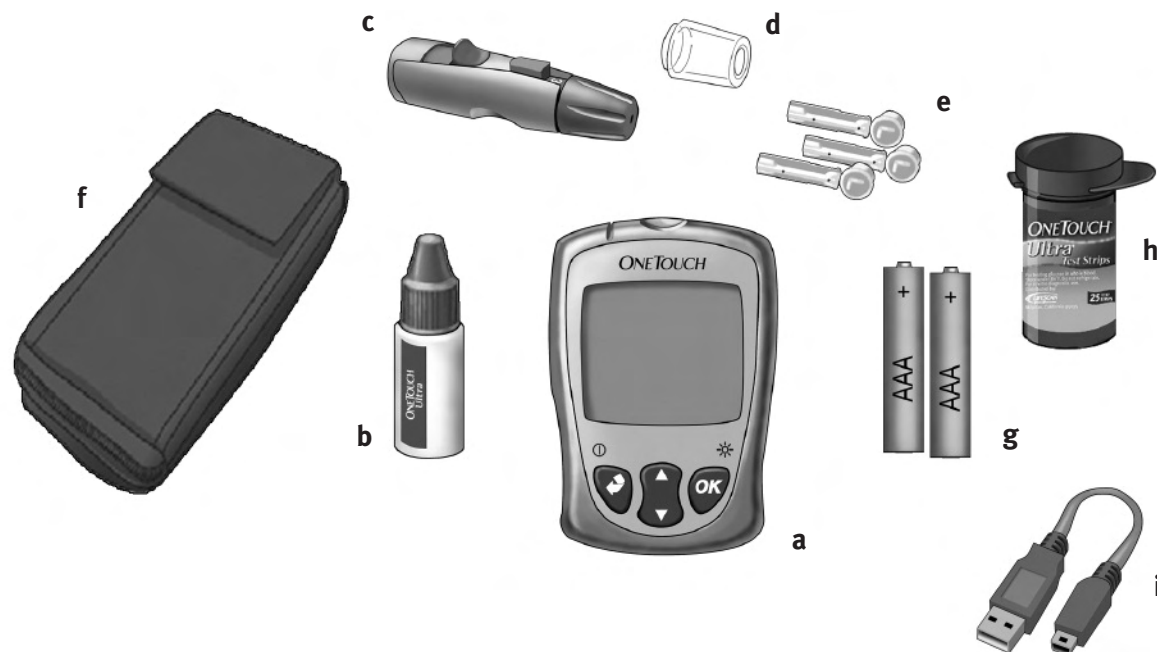


- a.** Animas® Insulin Pump
- b.** One Energizer Lithium L91 AA battery (1.5V) for your pump
- c.** Owner's Booklet
- d.** Envelope that includes *Instructions for Use* for IR 1200/2000 series cartridges
- e.** Sample Animas® IR 1200/2000 series (200 U/2ml) cartridge
- f.** Sample infusion sets
- g.** Sample skin prep
- h.** Leather Case
- i.** Low Profile Clip
- j.** Extra Battery Cap
- k.** Battery Cap Tool
- l.** ezManager® Software and download/upload cable



**BEFORE YOU BEGIN**

- The OneTouch® Meter Remote kit which includes:



- a. OneTouch® Meter Remote
- b. OneTouch® Ultra® Control Solution
- c. OneTouch® Lancing Device  
*If another type of lancing device is included, see the separate instructions for that lancing device.*
- d. OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap
- e. OneTouch® UltraSoft® Sterile Lancets
- f. Carrying Case
- g. Two 1.5V AAA Alkaline Batteries\* (batteries included but not installed)
- h. OneTouch® Ultra® Test Strips
- i. USB Cable

A warranty card for your meter remote is also included.

\* See *Chapter 9* in *Section II*, pages 163–166, for important information on the correct way to install the batteries in your meter remote.

**⚠ WARNING:** Keep the pump, meter remote, and accessories away from young children. Small items such as the battery door, batteries, battery cap, clip, test strips, lancets, protective disks on the lancets, and control solution vial cap are choking hazards.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN**

## Supply Reordering

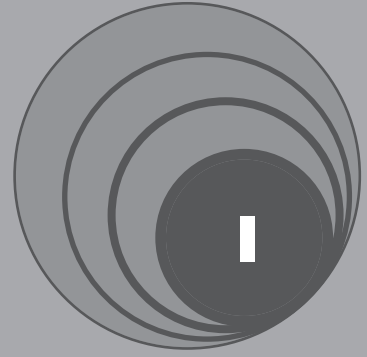
You can place orders for cartridges, infusion sets, skin prep, test strips, batteries and many meter remote and pump accessories by calling our Reorder Department or by visiting our eStore at <https://estore.animascorp.com/>. In the United States, Canada and Puerto Rico, you may also call 1-999-999-9999.

## Emergency Kit

Keep an emergency kit with you at all times to make sure you always have necessary supplies. This kit should include but is not limited to:

- Quick-acting glucose tablets or gel
- BG monitoring supplies including meter, strips, lancing device, lancets, meter remote batteries (2 AAA alkaline)
- Blood or urine ketone testing supplies
- Rapid-acting and other insulin as recommended by your health care team
- Extra infusion sets and IR 1200/2000 series cartridges
- Dressing and adhesive, if used
- An extra Energizer Lithium L91 AA battery for your pump
- An extra pump battery cap
- An extra pump cartridge cap (In the U.S., Canada and Puerto Rico, call 1-999-999-9999 to order an extra cartridge cap. All other customers contact your local Animas® distributor.)
- Glucagon Emergency Kit®
- Emergency contact phone numbers

Be sure to inform a family member, co-worker and/or friend where this emergency kit is kept.



*Animas<sup>®</sup> Insulin Pump*



## Welcome and Congratulations

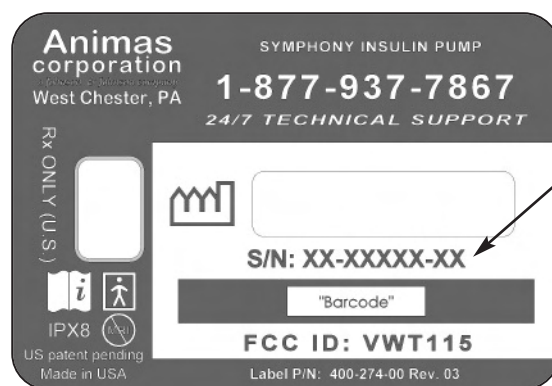
You have begun a new way of life with your Animas® Insulin Pump.

Your choice of pump therapy is a sign that you are committed to taking excellent care of yourself. Your pump has been specially designed to help you manage your diabetes, using advanced technology and sophisticated safety systems.

Your pump is used for insulin therapy to help maintain your blood glucose (BG) targets as recommended by your health care team. You program it to deliver two ways: a continuous, 24-hour “basal” rate and “bolus” insulin deliveries to accommodate for immediate doses to cover foods eaten and high BG. It is important to remember that successful pump therapy is a partnership of advanced technology and responsible self-care.

Please take a moment to look at the back of your pump and write down the serial number.

My pump serial number is: \_\_\_\_\_



Serial Number (S/N)

## Technical and Clinical Help

If there is anything you do not understand in the Owner's Booklet or if you have a question or need assistance with your pump, our Customer Service Department is available to you every minute of every day.

In the United States, Canada and Puerto Rico, call 1-999-999-9999 for assistance every minute of every day. For non-urgent technical questions, please email [pumpsupport@anmus.jnj.com](mailto:pumpsupport@anmus.jnj.com).


We understand that you may have questions and concerns when using a new product. Please do not hesitate to call for assistance!

## Important Note

Your pump comes with a transparent plastic film covering the display lens for protection during shipping. Be sure to remove this protective covering before using your pump.



## CHAPTER 1 - IMPORTANT INFORMATION

This section of the Owner's Booklet contains information about how to use, program and maintain your new pump. It is important to read it carefully. Even if you are an experienced pumper, keep your Owner's Booklet handy for reference. Warnings, cautions and safety tips are found throughout this Owner's Booklet, indicated by a  symbol.

### **WARNING:**

- **Do Not attempt to connect to your pump before you have been trained on your pump or unless your certified Animas® Insulin Pump trainer is present.**
- **Incorrect use of your pump, failure to follow the instructions in this Owner's Booklet or improper/inadequate self-care and troubleshooting techniques can lead to death or serious injury. If you do not understand something or have questions, ask your health care team or call our Customer Service representatives at 1-999-999-9999.**
- **Your pump is designed to deliver insulin reliably but because your pump uses only rapid-acting insulin, you will not have long-acting insulin in your body. To avoid the risk of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) or very high BG, you must be prepared to give yourself an injection of insulin if delivery is interrupted for any reason.**
- **Your pump is designed and calibrated to deliver U100 insulin. Use of any insulin with lesser or greater concentration can result in serious injury or death.**
- **Never prime tubing or tighten the cartridge cap while the infusion set is connected to your body. Doing so while the infusion set is connected to your body can result in unintended delivery of insulin, which can result in serious injury or death.**

## Warnings and Precautions

### **Radiology Equipment**

Your pump has been designed to operate in the presence of common sources of electrostatic and electromagnetic interference, including airport and store security systems. However, like all portable electronic devices, your pump should not be exposed to very strong electromagnetic fields, such as in MRI's, RF welders or magnets used to lift automobiles. Very strong magnetic fields, such as in an MRI, can re-magnetize the portion of the motor that regulates insulin delivery. **If you plan to undergo an MRI, remove your pump beforehand and keep it outside the room during the procedure.**



## CHAPTER 1 - IMPORTANT INFORMATION

## ⚠ Medical Procedures and Equipment

Procedure	Patient is Pumper	Health Care Professional/Technician is Pumper
<b>Pacemaker/ Automatic Implantable Cardioverter- Defibrillator (AICD)</b>	Disconnect pump and leave outside room during insertion of device and reprogramming. Infusion set can remain in place.	Follow normal safety practices and proceed to the designated safe area while each X-ray is taken and during reprogramming.
<b>EKG</b>	No need to disconnect.	No need to disconnect.
<b>Cardiac Catheterization</b>	Disconnect pump and leave outside room during procedure.	Follow normal safety practices and proceed to the designated safe area while each X-ray is taken.
<b>Nuclear Stress Test</b>	Disconnect pump and leave outside room during scan. Can remain connected during injection of radioisotope.	Follow normal safety practices and proceed to the designated safe area while each X-ray is taken.
<b>Colonoscopy</b>	No need to disconnect.	No need to disconnect.
<b>Laser Surgery</b>	Pump and infusion set can be worn; however some lasers can create interference and cause pump to alarm.	Pump and infusion set can be worn; however some lasers can create interference and cause pump to alarm.
<b>General Anesthesia</b>	Determination based on what medical equipment is being used in the procedure.	Determination based on what medical equipment is being used in the procedure.

For procedures not included above or on the chart on the following page, call **(in advance of your procedure)** 1-999-999-9999 in the U.S., Canada and Puerto Rico.

## CHAPTER 1 - IMPORTANT INFORMATION

# Medical Procedures and Equipment

Procedure	Patient is Pumper	Health Care Professional/Technician is Pumper
Dental X-Rays	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Pump should remain covered by lead apron placed on the patient by the dentist or technician.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Follow normal X-ray safety practices and proceed to the designated safe area when each X-ray is taken.</li> </ul>
Ultrasound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Transducer should not be pointed directly at pump or site. If site is directly in range of transducer, site should be removed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Transducer should not be pointed directly at pump or site.</li> </ul>
Mammogram and Bone Density Test	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Do Not</b> expose pump to test.</li> <li>Disconnect pump prior to test and leave pump in locked dressing room.</li> <li>Infusion set can remain in place during test.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Follow normal safety practices and proceed to the designated safe area while each test is being performed.</li> </ul>
Body X-Rays, Fluoroscopy (chest, neck, abdomen, torso, etc.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Do Not</b> expose pump to X-ray beam.</li> <li>Disconnect pump prior to exam and leave pump in locked dressing room.</li> <li>Infusion set can remain in place during X-ray.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Follow normal X-ray safety practices and proceed to the designated safe area when each X-ray is taken.</li> </ul>
Therapeutic Radiation/ Oncology (cancer treatment radiation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Do Not</b> expose pump to radiation treatment.</li> <li>Disconnect pump prior to radiation treatment and leave pump in locked dressing room.</li> <li>If the infusion set doesn't interfere with the area being treated, the set can remain in place during radiation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Follow normal radio-protection practices and proceed to the designated safe area while the patient is undergoing treatment.</li> </ul>
CT Scans and MRI's (Magnetic Resonance imaging)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Do Not bring pump into the exam room at any time.</b></li> <li><b>Disconnect pump and metal needle infusion set prior to exam and leave in a locked dressing room.</b></li> <li>Soft cannula infusion sets can remain in place.</li> <li>If pump is accidentally allowed in the exam room disconnect pump immediately and contact Customer Service for instructions.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>MRI: Do Not</b> bring pump into the same room as the MRI machine at any time.</li> <li>If pump is accidentally allowed in the MRI room disconnect pump immediately and contact Customer Service for instructions.</li> <li><b>CT Scan:</b> No need to disconnect.</li> <li>Follow normal CT Scan safety practices and proceed to the designated safe area when each Scan is performed.</li> </ul>
Electro-cautery surgery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disconnect from pump during surgery.</li> <li>Disconnect prior to surgery and leave pump in locked dressing room.</li> <li>If the infusion set doesn't interfere with the area being treated, the set can remain in place during surgery.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No need to disconnect.</li> </ul>

**When in doubt, disconnect and leave pump in locked dressing room.**

Follow usual instructions for bolusing to cover any missed basal insulin when you reconnect.

## CHAPTER 1 - IMPORTANT INFORMATION

**⚠ Amusement Parks**

Very powerful electromagnets are sometimes used on “free-fall” amusement park rides. **Pumps should be removed and not taken on these “free-fall” types of rides.**

High gravity forces can be experienced when riding on some roller-coasters. It is recommended that you disconnect (NOT suspend) your pump while on roller-coaster rides.

**⚠ Aircraft without Cabin Pressurization**

If flying in aircraft without cabin pressurization or flying in aircraft used for aerobatics or combat simulation (pressurized or not), it is recommended that you disconnect (NOT suspend) pump.

**Precautions**

- Your pump is a sealed device that should be opened **ONLY** by the manufacturer. If your pump seal is broken by anyone other than an authorized Animas® factory technician, the warranty is voided and your pump is no longer waterproof. If the back label on your pump is removed or damaged, the warranty is voided and your pump is no longer waterproof.
- When using your pump, if the pump is placed at a vertically higher position than the infusion site, a very small amount of additional insulin infusion may occur. To minimize this condition and maintain pump delivery accuracy, the vertical distance between your pump and the infusion site should be no more than 12 inches (30 cm). If your pump is placed at a vertically lower position than the infusion site, this condition is eliminated.
- Occasionally check the infusion site for proper placement and leaks. Improperly placed infusion sites or leaks around the infusion site can result in under infusion.
- Occasionally check the infusion set tubing for any damage, leaks or kinks while using your pump. Damaged, leaking or kinked tubing may restrict or stop insulin delivery and result in under infusion.
- Only use Animas® 1200/2000 series (200 unit/2ml) cartridges and infusion sets with a standard Luer™ connector. Efficacy of pump cannot be guaranteed if cartridges other than those manufactured by Animas® Corporation are used or if cartridges are used more than once.
- Always dispose of used cartridges and infusion sets following the regulations in your community. Failure to follow these guidelines may pose health hazards.
- Prior to replacing the battery cap, make sure the o-ring fits securely and is not damaged. A damaged o-ring may impact the battery contact and/or the waterproof feature of your pump. See *Chapter 4* in *Section I*, pages 15–26.
- Prior to inserting a cartridge into your pump, check the o-rings on the cartridge to be sure they are not damaged. Damaged cartridge o-rings can result in under or over delivery of insulin.
- Occasionally check the vents to be sure they are clear of debris. See *Chapter 12* in *Section I*, pages 73–74.
- Occasionally check that your pump personal settings are correct.
- Occasionally check to make sure your pump emits audible tones that are easily detectable and that the vibrate feature is working correctly. For example, audible tones should be heard and the vibration pulse felt every time you replace the battery.

## CHAPTER 1 - IMPORTANT INFORMATION

- If using the upload or download feature, keep the communication window free of obstructions and refer to the *Instructions for Use* included with the IR (infra-red) Accessory Kit. Contact your local Animas® distributor for information on ezManager® Software and IR Accessory Kit.

**NOTE:** Your pump uses battery power to notify you of alerts, warnings, and alarms. If you do not confirm the notification, your pump will continue to use battery power as the notifications repeat and progress. This will result in reduced battery life and the Replace Battery Alarm screen appearing sooner than expected.

Additionally, certain warnings (e.g., Low Cartridge Warning, Occlusion Alarm) take precedence over less critical ones (e.g., Low Battery Warning). This means if you do not confirm the more critical warning, battery life will be reduced and your pump may skip the Low Battery Warning and go directly to the Replace Battery Alarm, or battery life will end before a Replace Battery Alarm is displayed.

### ⚠ Safety Information

- Your pump is designed only for Continuous Subcutaneous Insulin Infusion (CSII). It is not intended for use with any other delivery substance.
- This section of the Owner's Booklet gives instruction on how to program and operate your pump. Animas® Corporation does not make any recommendations on specific programming related to your diabetes care program. Consult your health care team for instructions specific to your treatment plan.
  - Consult your health care team before using your pump to determine which programming features are appropriate for you. Some features require a greater knowledge of insulin pumping and advanced self-care skills. Additionally, some advanced programming features require that testing and fine-tuning of basic settings be completed in order to achieve the best possible results. Your health care team will give you specific training on programming and using your pump.
  - Use of Extended Bolus, Combo Bolus, ezCarb (carb calculator), Insulin on Board (IOB) and ezBG (BG correction calculator) all require input from your health care team. **Do Not** attempt to use these features until you have specific information for your treatment plan and have had specific training on each programming feature.
  - Only your health care team can determine your Insulin to Carbohydrate (I:C) ratios, Insulin Sensitivity Factors (ISFs), BG Target ranges and duration of Insulin on Board (IOB).
  - Basal rates that are too high or too low can adversely affect BG levels. Work with your health care team to fine-tune basal rates.
  - The way your body uses insulin can be affected by many things. Contact your health care team about lifestyle changes such as starting/stopping your exercise program or significant weight loss/gain. Your basal rates may need to be modified.
- **Do Not** stop using your pump if you are ill. Even when you're sick, your body still needs insulin. See *Chapter 15 in Section I*, pages 91–92.
- When you begin using the Audio Bolus feature, always look at the screen as you program so that you are completely comfortable with the feature before delivering a bolus via audio prompts only.
- Animas® Corporation recommends that you have someone around you (family, friends, etc.) who understands diabetes and pump therapy, so in the event of an emergency, they can help you. Be sure they are familiar with any information given to you by your health care team.

## CHAPTER 1 - IMPORTANT INFORMATION




- Before Bedtime
  - Try to arrange infusion set changes at meals or one to two hours before bedtime. If a change is needed at bedtime, then check BG in one to two hours. Always check BG one to two hours after infusion set change.
  - Always check that your cartridge has enough insulin to last through the night before going to bed. Unless otherwise recommended by your health care team, **Do Not** use the vibrate feature during sleep. It is recommended that you set the volume to high for all warnings and alarms before going to sleep.
- Always remove all air bubbles from cartridge and tubing before beginning insulin delivery. Air bubbles can compromise accuracy of delivery. Refer to the *Instructions for Use* included with your cartridge packaging.
- Interference with your pump electronics by cell phones can occur if worn in close proximity. It is recommended that you wear your pump and cell phone at least 6 inches apart. When RF is turned on and you are using your pump and meter remote together as a system, RF interference is possible. See *Chapter 7* in *Section III*, pages 217–218.
- If you return your pump for service and a replacement pump is sent, **Do Not** use the replacement pump until all the settings specific to your treatment plan have been programmed.
- If you drop your pump or it has been hit against something hard, inspect it to be sure it is still working properly. Check that the display screen is working and clear, that the cartridge cap, battery cap and infusion set are properly in place. Check for leaks around the cartridge by wrapping a piece of tissue around the connection area. Cracks, chips or damage to your pump may impact the battery contact and/or the waterproof feature of your pump. Call our Customer Service representatives at 1-999-999-9999 if you identify or suspect your pump has been damaged. They will help determine if your pump should be replaced.
- Your pump is designed to operate in conditions where temperatures are between 40°F and 104°F. If your pump is exposed to temperatures outside these parameters, extra care should be taken to protect it from extreme temperatures.
- Your pump and pump cartridges are latex free.
- To avoid risk of explosion, **Do Not** use your pump in the presence of explosive gases.
- Your pump is designed to achieve optimum performance and battery life with an Energizer Lithium L91 AA battery (1.5V). Rechargeable batteries and Carbon-Zinc batteries do not have the necessary characteristics to power your pump and should not be used. Some AA lithium batteries are available with other voltages such as 3.6V or 4.0V. **Do Not** use these batteries. Use of anything other than a 1.5V battery could permanently damage your pump and voids its warranty.
- **Do Not** use household cleaners, chemicals, solvents, bleach, scouring pads or sharp instruments to clean your pump. Never put your pump in the dishwasher or use very hot water to clean it.
- Never use a hair dryer, microwave oven or baking oven to dry your pump. Use a soft towel.

**⚠ WARNING: Your pump and pump accessories include small component pieces that could pose a choking hazard for small children.**

## CHAPTER 2 - EXPLANATION OF SYMBOLS

Shown below are symbols you will find on your Animas® Insulin Pump and its packaging.

### On the front of your pump:

-  Up Arrow button
-  Down Arrow button
-  OK button

### On the top of your pump:

-  Contrast button



### On the back of your pump:

-  Important Information (See Owner's Booklet for *Instructions for Use*)

**S/N** Serial Number


 Date of Manufacture

**IPX8** Water-Tight Equipment (protected against the effects of submersion; tested to 12 feet/3.6 meters for 24 hours)

 Type BF Medical Equipment (patient isolated, not defibrillator protected)

**Rx Only** CAUTION: Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by, or on the order of a physician.

 Consult Owner's Booklet

 **Do Not** wear or operate around MRI devices. Remove and leave outside MRI room before entering.



## CHAPTER 2 - EXPLANATION OF SYMBOLS



## CHAPTER 3 - INTRODUCTION TO YOUR ANIMAS® INSULIN PUMP

An insulin pump is a tool to allow you to better manage your diabetes by mimicking the way a healthy pancreas delivers insulin. When connected to a properly inserted infusion set, your pump delivers insulin at a continuous level (basal rate), 24 hours a day. You program delivery of an immediate dose (bolus) of insulin to cover food eaten or to correct high BG.

Your pump is engineered and manufactured to the highest standards of quality. Although it is a highly sophisticated medical device, it has been carefully designed to be easy to use.

### Get to Know Your Animas® Insulin Pump



### Main Programming Buttons

There are 3 buttons for main programming functions. The ▲ and ▼ buttons allow you to move through screen selections and to scroll up and down to enter values such as a bolus amount. The OK button allows you to select an item or activate a function.

### Programming Basics



- Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to scroll to the desired selection and then press the OK button to select. If the cursor is flashing, it means your pump is in Edit Mode and by scrolling with the ▲ / ▼ buttons, you can edit the flashing field.
- Once you have finished editing, press the OK button to confirm your entry and to exit the Edit Mode.

### Display Screen

All programming, operations, warnings and alarms are shown on the display screen.

## CHAPTER 3 - INTRODUCTION TO YOUR ANIMAS® INSULIN PUMP

## Contrast Button

Pressing this button adjusts the contrast of your display. There are three contrast levels: Dim, Default and Bright. To preserve battery life, your pump display will Auto-dim when a button is not pressed for half the time your display time-out is set. While in **Auto-dim** mode, you can restore the default contrast level you have set by pressing the  button on top of your pump. Pressing a function button while in Auto-dim mode will restore the default contrast level as well as perform the function of the key. To adjust contrast during a Call Service alarm, you must use the  button. See *Chapter 10 in Section I*, pages 49–58.

**NOTE:** When viewing your pump display in bright sunlight, it is recommended you shade the screen or move to a shady area for best visibility.

## Audio Bolus/ezBolus

This button allows you to program a bolus without looking at your pump, by using audible tones to confirm programming and delivery. If you choose not to activate the Audio Bolus feature, this button provides a shortcut to the Normal Bolus screen.

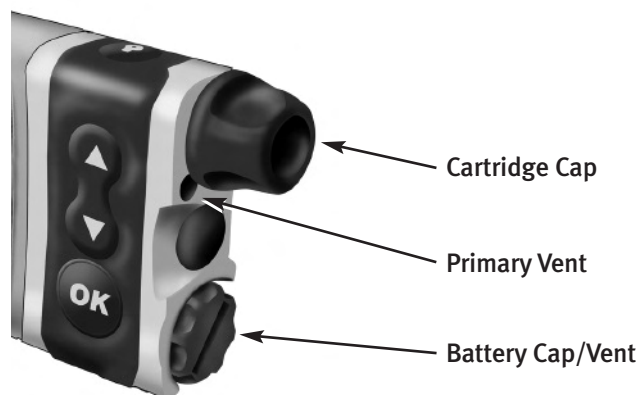
**NOTE:** When you first use the Audio Bolus feature, you should always look at the screen to confirm correct programming until you are comfortable with using audio feedback to program a bolus. See *Chapter 10 in Section I*, pages 49–58.

## Battery Cap/Vent

This cap unscrews easily with a coin or the battery cap tool to replace and secure your battery. There is an o-ring around the cap, which prevents water from entering. The battery cap also is equipped with a built-in vent to allow air to enter your pump to maintain pressurization but prevent water from entering. Be careful not to over tighten the battery cap. See *Chapter 4 in Section I*, pages 15–26.

## Primary Vent

This vent is part of the redundant vent safety system, which allows air inside your pump to maintain equalized pressure but prevents water from getting inside.



**⚠ WARNING:** Under no circumstances should you introduce any kind of sharp object into the vent openings to clean them. Doing so will compromise your pump's waterproof capabilities. If at any time you suspect the vent openings are clogged, replace the battery cap or call Animas® Customer Service for questions about the Primary Vent.

## Cartridge Compartment Cap

This cap secures your cartridge and infusion set in your pump.

**⚠ WARNING:** Never tighten the cartridge cap when your infusion set is attached to your body. Tightening the cartridge cap while your infusion set is attached to your body may result in unwanted insulin delivery, which can result in serious injury or death.

## IR Window for Download

The IR window is framed in blue. This is the infrared communication window used for downloading your pump data.

IR Window



## Sounds

Your pump allows you to customize the volume level or use the vibrate function to notify you of warnings and alarms and to confirm certain deliveries. With ezManager® Software, you can also add tunes to play as your initial audible notification for some Alerts, Reminders, Warnings and Alarms. Refer to your ezManager® User Guide included with the software.

## Tamper Resistant (Locked) Feature

You can use the tamper resistant feature to prevent accidental button pressing. Simply wake up your pump and press and hold the **▲** and **▼** buttons at the same time until the screen reads “(LOCKED)”. This locks your pump buttons. To unlock your pump, wake up your pump so the screen reads “(LOCKED)” and press and hold the **▲** and **▼** buttons at the same time until the screen display wakes up.

## Basic Display Screens

### Verify Screen

When you insert a battery, an all-black screen with an hourglass symbol will appear followed by the VERIFY screen. From here you should verify the settings for time, date, language and battery type. With “Confirm” highlighted, press **OK** to confirm the settings and go to the Home screen.

VERIFY	
	2:27PM
Mode	12 Hr
Month	Jan
Day	7
Year	2007
ENGLISH	
Battery = Lith	
Confirm	

**NOTE:** If you do not confirm the settings on the VERIFY screen, you will be notified with an alarm beep sequence on your pump. If not confirmed after 1 hour, the sequence will progress to 3 chirps/vib and then 4 long tones/vib within an hour.

### Home Screen

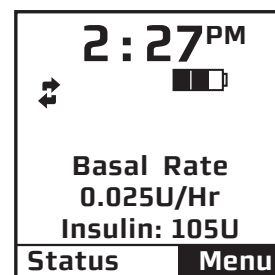
Once you have your pump set up, the Home screen is the first screen that is displayed when you “wake up” your pump. Press any button to wake up your pump. The Home screen shows the time of day, a battery life indicator, if you have an extended bolus or temp basal currently active, current basal rate, and how much insulin remains in your cartridge. You access the Main Menu from here or you can take a shortcut to the Status menu. The battery life indicator is shaded to show approximate battery life remaining.

2:27PM	
Basal Rate	
0.025U/Hr	
Insulin: 105U	
Status	Menu

## CHAPTER 3 - INTRODUCTION TO YOUR ANIMAS® INSULIN PUMP

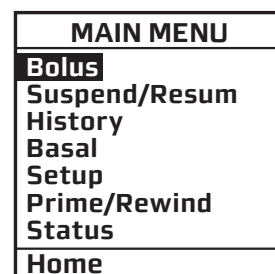
**NOTE:** When the RF feature is activated on your pump, an RF (↕) symbol will appear on the top left of your pump Home screen.

After a set amount of time with no button presses, your pump display screen will “time out” to conserve battery life. When your pump times out, the screen display is blank.



## Main Menu Screen

This screen shows all Main Menu options.



## Bolus

This selection takes you to the Normal Bolus screen. If you have activated Advanced Bolus features, the Bolus Menu will be displayed. From the Bolus Menu you can select the bolus type, program and deliver the bolus dose.

## Suspend/Resume

The Suspend function stops all insulin deliveries and Resume restarts basal delivery.

## History

This option allows you to review history of boluses, total daily dose (TDD), alarms, primes, suspend and basal information.

## Basal

The Basal Menu allows you to access and program your basal rate. This continuous rate maintains your blood glucose between meals. This rate will be determined by your health care team. The default Basal Menu will display one basal program and the Temp Basal option. You can activate additional basal program options with the Setup Advanced menu.

## Setup

This menu allows you to personalize the settings and features of your pump, as well as add advanced features to the menu. Your health care team will advise you on which features are best suited for your plan of treatment, as well as train you to achieve the best results.

## Prime/Rewind

This function enables you to properly align the cartridge and piston rod as well as prime your infusion set tubing and fill your cannula or needle before connecting to your pump.

## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

### Status

This feature allows you to quickly see your current/most recent settings and pump deliveries.

**⚠ WARNING:** Before proceeding with this chapter, you should have completed your pump training and/or watched your training video.

To complete this section, you will need the following items:

- Animas® Insulin Pump
- Energizer Lithium L91 AA battery (1.5V)
- Battery cap tool or coin
- Infusion set with standard Luer connector
- Animas® IR 1200/2000 series (200/2ml unit) cartridge
- Alcohol wipe (to clean top of insulin vial)
- Vial of U100 insulin (rapid-acting) at room temperature
- Skin prep such as IV Prep™ (to clean and prepare site for infusion set insertion)

**⚠ CAUTION:** Under no circumstances should you use an alcohol wipe or skin prep to clean your pump. See *Chapter 12* in *Section I*, pages 73–74.

### Battery Type

Your pump is designed to achieve optimum performance and battery longevity with an Energizer Lithium L91 AA battery (1.5V).

**⚠ CAUTION:** It is possible to safely power your pump with a conventional AA Alkaline battery (1.5V), but battery life is significantly reduced. Be sure you select the correct Battery Type on the VERIFY screen when you change the battery to ensure accuracy of battery life indicator.

If you must use an AA Alkaline battery, the following is recommended:

- Energizer E91 (labeled as Energizer MAX)

**⚠ WARNING:**

- **Rechargeable batteries and Carbon-Zinc batteries do not have the necessary characteristics to power your pump and must not be used. Use of these batteries voids your pump warranty.**
- **Under no circumstances should you attempt to power your pump with a high-energy 3.6V AA Lithium battery. Use of these batteries could permanently damage your pump and voids its warranty.**

## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

**NOTE:** Your pump uses battery power to notify you of alerts, warnings, and alarms. If you do not confirm the notification, your pump will continue to use battery power as the notifications repeat and progress. This will result in reduced battery life and the Replace Battery Alarm screen appearing sooner than expected.

Additionally, certain warnings (e.g., Low Cartridge Warning, Occlusion Alarm) take precedence over less critical ones (e.g., Low Battery Warning). This means if you do not confirm the more critical warning, battery life will be reduced and your pump may skip the Low Battery Warning and go directly to the Replace Battery Alarm, or battery life will end before a Replace Battery Alarm is displayed.

### Changing the Battery

Each time you change the battery

- A full rewind and prime sequence is required. See *Priming your Pump and Infusion Set*, pages 22–24 in this chapter.
- The Insulin on Board (IOB) calculation starts over at zero.
- The Combo bolus returns to the factory set default duration and split.
- You should review your basal program settings.

**⚠ WARNING: Low Battery Warning means battery life will only last a minimum of 30 minutes.**

1. Use a coin or the battery cap tool to unscrew the battery cap with a counter-clockwise motion.
2. Check your battery cap for damage such as cracks or missing threads, and be sure the colored o-ring fits securely and is not torn or damaged.
3. Check the vent hole on the top of the battery cap to be sure it is clear of debris. This vent maintains pressurization while preventing water from entering the compartment.

**NOTE:** The battery cap should be replaced once each year or sooner if the o-ring or cap is damaged or the vent is clogged. See *Chapter 12* in *Section I*, pages 73–74.

4. Insert the Energizer Lithium L91 AA (1.5V) battery into the battery compartment with the positive (+) end going in first.

5. Replace the cap by turning clockwise until you cannot see the o-ring but **Do Not over tighten**.

**NOTE:** Over tightening the battery cap can cause your pump case to crack. Cracks, chips, or damage to your pump may impact the battery contact and/or the waterproof feature of your pump.

6. Each time you change the battery, your pump will run a series of self-tests which will last a few seconds. An all black screen with an hourglass symbol will appear followed by the VERIFY screen. Your pump will give a beep to alert you to **verify** (or change) the time/date, language and battery type.



## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

**7.** Check the displayed time/date, battery type and language. If correct, scroll down to highlight “Confirm” and press the **OK** button. The Home screen will be displayed. For more details on changing the time and date, see *Setup - Basics, Setting/Changing Time and Date*, pages 17–18 in this chapter.

**NOTE:** The time and date must be programmed to confirm the VERIFY screen.


**8.** To change the battery type, highlight the “Battery” field and press **OK** to activate Edit mode (indicated by flashing cursor).

**9.** Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change battery type and press **OK** to confirm and exit Edit Mode.

**NOTE:** The correct battery type must be selected in order for your battery life indicator to be accurate. “Lith” = Lithium, “Alkl” = Alkaline.

**10.** Scroll to “Confirm” and press **OK**. The Home screen is displayed.

**NOTE:** Until you have programmed a basal rate, the Alert screen shown here will appear when your pump is awakened. Simply scroll to “Confirm” and press **OK** to move past this Alert screen.

2:27 <sup>PM</sup> 	
Basal Rate 0.025U/Hr Insulin: 105U	
Status	Menu

Alert	
Your active basal program is empty. 0.000U/Hr	
Confirm	Basal Menu

## Setup – Basics

You can use your computer, with ezManager®, to upload Time/Date and Sound settings. For instructions on uploading Time/Date Sound settings, refer to your ezManager® User Guide.


## Setting/Changing the Time and Date

When you change your battery, the VERIFY screen allows you to edit the time and date.

You can also access the Time/Date SETUP screen by selecting “Setup” from the MAIN MENU.

**1.** From the Home screen, press **OK** to select “Menu”. Scroll to “Setup” on the MAIN MENU. Press **OK**.

**2.** Scroll to Time/Date on the SETUP menu. Press **OK**.

2:27 <sup>PM</sup> 	
Basal Rate 0.025U/Hr Insulin: 105U	
Status	Menu

MAIN MENU	
Bolus Suspend/Resum History Basal Setup Prime/Rewind Status Home	

SETUP	
Time/Date	
Sound	
Advanced	
Main Menu	

SETUP	
Time/Date	
Hour: Minute	2: 27PM
Mode	12 Hr
Month	Jan
Day	7
Year	2007
Main Menu	

**3.** Press the **OK** button to activate Edit Mode (indicated by flashing cursor).

**4.** Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to your desired settings. Press the **OK** button to confirm your setting and exit Edit mode.



## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

5. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to select the next field. Repeat the above process. Scroll to highlight “Main Menu” and press **OK** button when finished. The MAIN MENU screen will be displayed.

### NOTE:

- If you select the 12-hour time format, the AM/PM indicators will change as you scroll to set the time. Be sure the desired AM or PM selection is correctly displayed when setting the time.
- If you select the 24-hour time format, the time will be shown in military time.

## Daylight Saving Time (certain states and countries only)

### “Spring Forward”

If you advance the hour on your pump clock after **11pm but before midnight**, you must also manually forward the date by one day. If you change your pump clock **after midnight**, your pump date will have changed automatically to the appropriate date.

### “Fall Back”

It is recommended that you set your clock back **before midnight on Saturday or after 1am on Sunday**. This keeps your pump set to the correct date. Your pump will register an additional hour in the Daily Totals History because the day has essentially been altered to consist of 25 hours. If you change the clock between midnight and 1am, you must also change the date. This will result in a duplicate date entry in your history. (This duplicate entry will contain up to one hour’s worth of insulin delivered.)

## Sounds - Setting/Changing

Note that this menu only adjusts sounds. It does not activate the feature. For example, Audio Bolus Sound is adjusted in this menu, but to turn the Audio Bolus feature on, go to the Setup Advanced menu. See *Chapter 10 in Section I*, pages 49–58.

Your pump comes pre-loaded with a tune for most Alerts, Reminders and Alarms on medium and high volume settings. This tune plays only for the initial audible notification. If you do not confirm the initial notification, the next sound will be the factory default. If not confirmed, Warnings and Alarms will automatically progress to high volume and vibrate within one hour. With ezManager® Software, you can change or add tunes to play as your initial notification for some Alerts, Reminders, Warnings and Alarms. Refer to your ezManager® User Guide included with the software.

The options from the first SETUP SOUND menu are listed below. The first three can be set to one of the following: Vibrate (Vib), Low volume (L) , Medium volume (M) , High volume (H) or can be shut off (OFF) completely. For safety reasons, some sounds **cannot** be turned off.

### Normal Bolus Sound

**Audio Bolus Sound** (OFF is not an option for this sound setting)

### Temp Basal Sound

**Remote Bolus Sound** (Vibrate and OFF are the only options for this sound)

## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

The Remote Bolus Sound on your pump signals you when you use your meter remote to deliver a bolus from your pump. This setting applies only when you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system (see *Section III*). Vibrate (Vib) is the default setting and OFF is the only other option for this sound setting.

The options from the second Setup Sound Menu are listed below. They can be set to one of the following: Vibrate (Vib), Low volume (L), Medium volume (M) or High volume (H). For safety reasons, some sounds **cannot** be turned off.

### Alert Sound

### Reminder Sound

**Warning Sound** (OFF is not an option for this sound setting)

**Alarm Sound** (OFF is not an option for this sound setting)

**NOTE:** If you download tunes from ezManager® Software to play on your initial audible notification, they will not play for any sound set at the Low volume (L) level.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Unless otherwise recommended by your health care professional, vibrate mode should not be used during sleep. If you are a very sound sleeper, set the alarm volume to high before going to bed.

1. From the MAIN MENU, scroll to “Setup”. Press the **OK** button.
2. Scroll to “Sound”. Press the **OK** button to go to the SETUP SOUND screen.
3. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to your selection. Press the **OK** button.
4. The cursor will flash to indicate you can edit the selection. Use **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting. Press the **OK** button to confirm.

MAIN MENU
Bolus
Suspend/Resum
History
Basal
<b>Setup</b>
Prime/Rewind
Status
Home

SETUP
Time/Date
<b>Sound</b>
Advanced
Main Menu

SETUP SOUND
N-Bolus <b>H</b>
A-Bolus L
R-Bolus Vib
T-Basal OFF
Next Menu
Main Menu

SETUP SOUND
Alert L
Reminder Vib
Warning M
Alarm <b>H</b>
Main Menu

5. Repeat for remaining selections.
6. Scroll to “Next Menu” to access second SETUP SOUND menu or scroll to “Main Menu” when finished to return to the MAIN MENU.

## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

## The Cartridge

### Filling the Cartridge

Refer to the *Instructions for Use* included with your cartridges.

### Connecting the Tubing to the Cartridge

To complete this section, you will need the following:

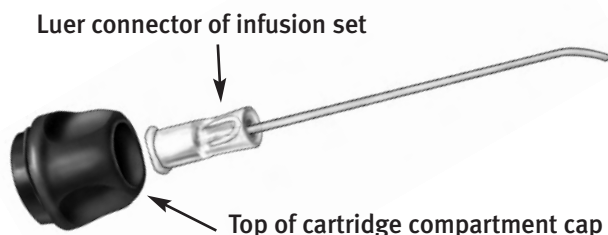
- Filled Animas® IR 1200/2000 series cartridge
- Infusion set compatible with your Animas® Insulin Pump
- Skin prep such as IV Prep™

**⚠ WARNING:** The efficacy of your pump cannot be guaranteed if cartridges other than those manufactured by Animas® Corporation are used.

**Only infusion sets marketed for use with insulin infusion pumps using insulin-compatible tubing and with a standard Luer lock can be used with your Animas® Insulin Pump. The efficacy of your pump cannot be guaranteed if infusion sets other than those specified are used.**

**Do Not connect infusion set to your body until after you have completed the Prime process.**

1. Clean the workspace where you will be connecting the infusion set to the cartridge. Wash your hands thoroughly with soap and water.
2. Open sterile infusion set package carefully. If the package is damaged or opened, use another set and contact your supplier.
3. Unscrew the cartridge compartment cap from your pump, using a counter-clockwise motion.
4. Remove infusion set tubing cap from the Luer connector. (Not all infusion sets have these caps.)

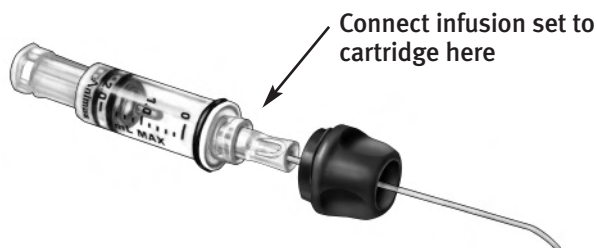


5. After removing protective cap, thread the Luer connector of the infusion set through the top (smaller) opening of the cartridge compartment cap, being careful not to touch Luer tip with hands or work surface.



## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

**6.** Remove cap from the filled cartridge tip. To avoid insulin spillage and introduction of air in the cartridge, it should never be filled beyond the 2.0 mL mark. The plunger is properly positioned for maximum fill when the black o-ring nearest the plunger tip is centered on the 2.0 mL mark. Attach infusion set Luer connector to cartridge tip using clockwise motion until finger tight **and then twist another quarter of a turn.**



**⚠ WARNING:** Be sure to twist the Luer connector an extra quarter of a turn to ensure a secure connection. If the connection is not secure, insulin may leak around the cartridge, resulting in under delivery of insulin.

**7.** Put cartridge/tubing assembly aside.

### NOTE:

- Check for leaks, cracks or damage each time you change your cartridge and infusion set. To avoid leakage, be sure to tighten the Luer connection securely. You can check for moisture periodically by wrapping a tissue around the Luer connection between the cartridge and infusion set.
- When handling the cartridge, take care not to twist or turn the plunger in the cartridge body. Maintaining straight alignment of the plunger keeps the o-rings properly seated, which minimizes the possibility of introducing air into the cartridge and will prevent insulin spillage.

## Changing the Cartridge

- 1.** Disconnect infusion set from your body.
- 2.** Unscrew the cartridge cap, leaving tubing connected to the cartridge.
- 3.** With the tubing connected to the cartridge, pull cartridge straight out of your pump.
- 4.** Disconnect tubing from cartridge and discard. Proceed with filling the new cartridge as outlined above.

## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

## Priming your Pump and Infusion Set

**NOTE:** As each step is completed, the check box on the ezPrime menu will be shaded.

**⚠ WARNING:** Never prime the tubing or tighten the cartridge cap while infusion set is connected to your body. Priming the tubing or tightening the cartridge cap while the infusion set is connected to your body can result in serious injury or death.

### 1. Make sure you are disconnected from your pump.

MAIN MENU
Bolus
Suspend/Resum
History
Basal
Setup
<b>Prime/Rewind</b>
Status
Home

### 2. From the MAIN MENU, select “Prime/Rewind”.

ezPrime
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Rewind</b>
<input type="checkbox"/> Load Cart
<input type="checkbox"/> Prime
<input type="checkbox"/> Fill Cannula
Main Menu

REWIND MOTOR
Disconnect infusion set from your body!
Go Rewind
<b>Cancel</b>

### 3. On the ezPrime menu, “Rewind” is highlighted. Press **OK**. The REWIND MOTOR screen is displayed.

### 4. Scroll up to “Go Rewind”. Press **OK**. Your pump will rewind the piston rod.

REWIND MOTOR
Disconnect infusion set from your body!
<b>Go Rewind</b>
Cancel

REWIND ACTIVE
Please wait. Full rewind required.
<<-----<<-----<<-----

**NOTE:** Before starting the rewind, your pump will vibrate as it performs a self test.

### 5. When the rewind action is complete, the REWIND COMPLETE screen is displayed. Your pump will beep once to let you know the rewind is complete.

REWIND ACTIVE
Position: 160U
<<-----<<-----<<-----
<b>Stop</b>

**NOTE:** If using a partially filled cartridge, you can select Stop during the Rewind Active function to stop the rewind at the position desired. After every third rewind, your pump is required to do a Full Rewind and will not offer the option of selecting the “Stop” position. A Full Rewind is always required when a battery is inserted.

## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

6. Insert your filled cartridge.
7. Secure cartridge compartment cap to pump by turning in a clockwise motion until finger tight but **Do Not** over tighten.

**⚠ WARNING: Never tighten the cartridge cap while the infusion set is connected to your body. Tightening the cartridge cap while the infusion set is connected to your body can result in serious injury or death.**

ezPrime
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Rewind <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Load Cart</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Prime <input type="checkbox"/> Fill Cannula
Main Menu

**NOTE:** If screen display has timed out while loading your cartridge, select Prime/Rewind from the MAIN MENU and highlight “Load Cart” from the ezPrime menu. Press **OK** to display the REWIND COMPLETE screen. Continue with Step 8.

8. On the REWIND COMPLETE screen, “Continue” is highlighted. Press **OK**. Your pump will align the piston rod with the cartridge. The LOAD CARTRIDGE ACTIVE screen is displayed, followed by the PRIME screen. Your pump will beep once to let you know the cartridge is aligned with the piston rod.

REWIND COMPLETE
Load U100 cartridge. Attach cap Select Continue.
<b>Continue</b> Cancel

LOAD CARTRIDGE ACTIVE
Please wait.
>>----->>----->>-----

PRIME
Be sure set is disconnected from your body. Then select Continue.
Insulin: 200U
<b>Continue</b> Cancel

9. On the PRIME screen, “Continue” is highlighted. Press **OK**.

10. The DELIVER PRIME screen is displayed. **Be sure the infusion set is not connected to your body until the prime is complete.**

DELIVER PRIME
Press AND HOLD OK button while priming tubing.
Insulin: 200U
<b>Go Prime</b> Cancel

**⚠ WARNING: Never prime while the infusion set is connected to your body. Priming while the infusion set is connected to your body can result in serious injury or death.**

## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

**11.** Make sure “Go Prime” is highlighted. Press **and hold** the **OK** button until you see 5 drops of insulin come out the end of your infusion set. This means your tubing is primed. The PRIMING ACTIVE screen is displayed, followed by the PRIMING DONE screen.

PRIMING ACTIVE
Press AND HOLD OK button while priming tubing.
Insulin: 177U
>>----->>----->>-----

PRIMING DONE
23U Primed
177U Remaining

Refer to the *Instructions for Use* included with your infusion set for proper insertion guidelines. See *Selecting the Infusion Site and Inserting the Infusion Set*, page 25 in this chapter.

**12.** From the ezPrime menu, “Fill Cannula” is highlighted. Press the **OK** button. The FILL CANNULA screen is displayed.

ezPrime
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Rewind <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Load Cart <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prime <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Fill Cannula</b>
Main Menu

FILL CANNULA
Amount <b>0.00</b> U
Go
Main Menu

**NOTE:** This step is not necessary for needle sets.

**13.** Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to enter the amount of insulin needed to fill the cannula. Refer to the *Instructions for Use* included with your infusion set for details on how much insulin is required to fill the cannula.

**NOTE:** The maximum Fill Cannula amount is 1U at a time.

If your pump is suspended, the screen will alert you with the ezPrime “Pump suspended” screen. You must resume delivery of your pump in order to complete the Priming function.

ezPRIME
Pump suspended. Priming is disabled.
Rewind
Home

**NOTE:** The Fill Cannula step is not required for your pump to operate. For example, when you prime your pump after a battery change and you are not inserting a new infusion set, this step is not necessary. Filling the cannula when not necessary can result in unwanted delivery of insulin.

## Selecting the Infusion Site and Inserting the Infusion Set

Your health care team will review appropriate site selections and techniques for insertion based on your body type. Refer to the *Instructions For Use* included with your infusion set for proper insertion guidelines.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do Not attempt to insert the infusion set into your body until you have been trained by your health care team. Improper insertion of your infusion set can lead to death or serious injury.

## Changing the Cartridge and Infusion Set

Cartridges and infusion sets require replacement and are not to be reused. Infusion sets should be replaced approximately every 2–3 days or as directed by your health care team. Refer to the insulin labeling and follow the direction of your health care team for frequency of replacing the cartridge.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Occasionally check the infusion set tubing for any damage, air bubbles, leaks or kinking, which may restrict or stop insulin delivery and result in under infusion.



## CHAPTER 4 - GETTING YOUR PUMP READY

## CHAPTER 5 - USING THE NORMAL BOLUS FEATURE

This chapter covers the basics of a Normal bolus, which is used to cover food you have eaten and high BG.

Your pump also offers advanced bolus features. See *Chapter 10* in *Section I*, pages 49–58.

MAIN MENU
<b>Bolus</b>
Suspend/Resum
History
Basal
Setup
Prime/Rewind
Status
Home

1. From the MAIN MENU, select “Bolus”.

2. The cursor will flash over the amount field to indicate that it can be edited. Use the  $\Delta$  /  $\nabla$  buttons to enter desired bolus amount. Press **OK**.

NORMAL BOLUS
Amount
<b>0.00</b> <sup>u</sup>
Go
Main Menu

NORMAL BOLUS
Amount
<b>2.35</b> <sup>u</sup>
Go
Main Menu

NORMAL BOLUS
Amount
<b>2.35</b> <sup>u</sup>
<b>Go</b>
Main Menu

3. Go is highlighted. Press **OK** to deliver the bolus.

DELIVERING
<b>2.00</b> <sup>u</sup>
Press any function button to Cancel

4. The DELIVERING bolus screen is displayed. If you have activated the Normal Bolus sound in the SETUP SOUND menu, your pump will beep to confirm start of delivery, as well as when delivery is complete.

**NOTE:** During a bolus delivery, you can stop delivery at any time by pressing any button on the front panel of your pump. The Warning screen shown here will be displayed. Confirm the Warning by pressing **OK** and check your Bolus History for the amount delivered.

Warning
Bolus delivery canceled by user button press.
Delivered: 2.00U of 2.35U
<b>Confirm</b>

**NOTE:** You can check when you last gave a bolus by looking in History or Status. These features are covered later. See *Chapter 8*, pages 39–44, and *Chapter 9*, pages 45–48, in *Section I*.

**CHAPTER 5 - USING THE NORMAL BOLUS FEATURE**

**NOTE:** If you have Advanced Bolus and Reminders features turned on, the BOLUS MENU at right will be displayed when you select “Bolus” from the MAIN MENU. Select Normal and press **OK**. Follow steps 2 through 4 in this chapter.

BOLUS MENU	
Normal	
ezCarb	
ezBG	
Combo Bolus	
Reminders	
Main Menu	

## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

You can program your pump to display either 1 or 4 basal program options. Basal insulin is delivered continuously to help keep your BG in target between meals. Having more than one pre-set basal program makes it easy for you to switch based on your needs including weekends, weekdays, shiftwork, and menstruation. If you are new to pumping, your health care team may suggest you first become comfortable with one program before using multiple basal programs. The factory default displays one basal program and the temporary basal program. To display multiple basal options, see *Chapter 10* in *Section I*, pages 49–58.

You can use your computer and ezManager® Software to upload basal program names as well as basal rates. For instructions on uploading basal program information, refer to the ezManager® User Guide included with the software.

### Setting a Basal Program

Each basal program can be set with up to 12 different basal rates (doses) in a 24-hour period. These 12 start times can be set to accommodate your changing basal needs throughout the day. For example, your body may need more insulin in the early morning to compensate for the “dawn phenomenon.” You can program time segments to begin at any hour or half hour.

**NOTE:** The ▲ / ▼ buttons will move the cursor through fields when not in Edit mode. When in Edit mode, the ▲ / ▼ buttons will change the value of the field. If the cursor is flashing, that means you can edit the entry. Use the **OK** button to start/stop Edit mode.

Use the *My Information* chart in *Chapter 17* in *Section I*, pages 95–98 to record and enter your basal program times and doses as recommended by your health care team.

MAIN MENU
Bolus
Suspend/Resum
History
<b>Basal</b>
Setup
Prime/Rewind
Status
Home

1. From the MAIN MENU, select “Basal”.

The BASAL MENU displays the following:

- Total basal insulin programmed for the 24-hour period
- Temp (if you wish to program a Temporary Basal rate)
- The active basal program, designated by number and by name, as well as an “A” to indicate the active program. (If you have activated multiple basal programs in the Setup Advanced menu, all 4 basal program options will be displayed as shown below, right.)

BASAL MENU	
Total	0.00U
Temp	
A1-WEEKDAY	
Main Menu	

BASAL MENU	
Total	0.00U
Temp	
A1-WEEKDAY	
2-other	
3-weekend	
4-exercise	
Main Menu	

## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

2. Scroll to select the program “1-WEEKDAY” and press **OK**.

**NOTE:** You do not have to Suspend your pump to edit an active program. When you select “Edit” from the BASAL MENU, your pump automatically suspends delivery. When you exit the Edit mode, the active program delivery automatically resumes.

BASAL MENU	
Total	0.00U
Temp	
A1-WEEKDAY	
Main Menu	

3. The BASAL OPTIONS screen is displayed. “Edit” is highlighted. Press the **OK** button. From the EDIT BASAL screen, you can edit the basal segments of the selected program.

BASAL OPTIONS	
A1-WEEKDAY	
Total	0.00U
Clear	
Edit	
Review	
Go	
Main Menu	

EDIT BASAL		
Total		0.00U
Start	E	U/Hr
12:00A		0.000
--:--		--.---
Save/Review		

4. Scroll to the desired “U/Hr” field. Press **OK** to activate Edit mode (indicated by flashing cursor).

EDIT BASAL		
Total		0.60U
Start	E	U/Hr
12:00A		0.025
--:--		--.---
Save/Review		

5. Use **▲** / **▼** buttons to set desired basal rate. Press **OK** to confirm and exit Edit mode for this field.

EDIT BASAL		
Total		0.60U
Start	E	U/Hr
12:00A		0.025
4:00A		--.---
Save/Review		

6. Scroll down to select the next “Start” time field. Press the **OK** button to activate Edit mode (indicated by flashing cursor).

**NOTE:** The next available empty basal segment will appear automatically as you program the previous segment. If the next empty basal segment does not appear, you have programmed all 12 possible segments.

EDIT BASAL		
Total		13.60U
Start	E	U/Hr
12:00A		0.025
4:00A		0.675
--:--		--.---
Save/Review		

7. Change next “Start” time field as desired, press the **OK** button to exit Edit mode. Segments can start on the hour or half hour.

**NOTE:** The 24-hour Total changes automatically as you change U/Hr settings.

## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

8. Continue until basal segments have been set as recommended by your health care team.
9. When finished, scroll to “Save/Review” and press **OK**. *If you have edited the active program, it is now resumed automatically.* The BASAL OPTIONS screen is displayed.

Warning
Basal edit not saved. Basal delivery suspended.
Edit Basal

**NOTE:** If your screen display has timed out (gone to sleep) before you have selected Save/Review while editing, a Warning screen will remind you the basal edit has not been saved. See *Chapter 13 in Section I*, pages 75–84.

10. “Review” is highlighted. Press **OK** to review your entries for accuracy. Your basal segment settings are shown (5 on first screen, 5 on second screen and 2 on last screen). If you have more than 5 segments programmed, scroll to “Next” to see second and third screens as desired.

BASAL OPTIONS
A1-WEEKDAY Total 13.60U
Clear Edit Review
Go
Main Menu

11. “Options” is highlighted. Press **OK**. The BASAL OPTIONS screen is displayed.

- a. If you’ve edited and saved/reviewed the active program, it is resumed automatically. You can also select “Go” and the Home screen is displayed, which shows the current rate of delivery for the program that is active.
- b. If you’ve edited an inactive program and wish to activate it, select “Go” from the BASAL OPTIONS screen. When you select “Go”, the Home screen is displayed, which shows the current rate of delivery for the program that is active.

BASAL OPTIONS
A1-WEEKDAY Total 13.60U
Clear Edit Review Go
Main Menu

## Adding/Changing Segments in an Existing Basal Program

- From the BASAL MENU, select desired program.
- “Edit” is highlighted. Press **OK**.
- Scroll up to highlight the field you wish to change or to next available blank line to add a segment. Press **OK** to activate Edit mode. (The cursor will flash to indicate Edit mode.)
- Use **▲** / **▼** buttons to set Start times and U/Hr amounts.
- Check that the AM/PM settings are correct.

## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

**NOTE:**

- If you program a segment to start at the same time as an existing segment, the previously entered segment is deleted.
- If you program a segment to start at a time that precedes an existing segment, the new segment is automatically inserted in the correct place. You must then scroll to the new segment, highlight the corresponding U/Hr field and enter or change amount, if desired.

**6.** When finished, scroll to “Save/Review” and press **OK**. If you have edited the active program, it is now resumed automatically. The BASAL OPTIONS screen is displayed.

**a.** Select “Review” from the BASAL OPTIONS screen to review your entries for accuracy. Your basal segment settings are shown (5 on first screen, 5 on second screen and 2 on last screen). If you have more than 5 segments programmed, scroll to “Next” to see second and third screens as desired.

**b.** If you’ve edited an inactive program, select the program from the BASAL MENU. Press **OK**. Select “Go” from the BASAL OPTIONS screen to activate the program you’ve selected.

When you select “Go”, the Home screen is displayed, which shows the current rate of delivery for the program that is active. (Or you can simply wait for your pump display to time out. When you press any button, your active basal program rate information is displayed on the Home screen.)

**⚠ CAUTION:** Always review changes to your basal program to be sure they are correct. Incorrect basal rates can result in under or over delivery of insulin. See *Reviewing Basal Programs*, page 32 in this chapter.

## Reviewing Basal Programs

**1.** From the BASAL MENU, scroll to highlight desired program. Press **OK**.

**2.** Scroll to “Review” from the BASAL OPTIONS screen. Press **OK**. Your basal segment settings are shown (5 on first screen, 5 on second screen and 2 on last screen). If you have more than 5 segments programmed, scroll to “Next” to see second and third screens as desired.

BASAL OPTIONS	
A1-WEEKDAY	
Total	13.60U
Clear	
Edit	
<b>Review</b>	
Go	
Main Menu	

A1-WEEKDAY	
Total	13.60U
Start	U/Hr
12:00A	0.025
4:00A	0.675
---:--	---:--
<b>Options</b>	Next

**3.** When finished, “Options” is highlighted. Press **OK**.

**4.** Scroll to “Main Menu” and press **OK**. The MAIN MENU screen is displayed. *The active basal program continues.*

**5.** If reviewing an inactive program and you wish to activate it, select the program you wish to activate from the BASAL MENU screen. Press **OK**.

**6.** Select “Go” from the BASAL OPTIONS screen to activate the program. The Home screen is displayed to show the current rate per hour of the program you have activated.

## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

## Clearing Basal Programs

This feature allows you to clear all information from a basal program.

1. From the BASAL MENU, scroll to desired program.
2. From the BASAL OPTIONS screen, scroll to “Clear”. Press **OK**.

If you press **OK** to select “Clear”, your pump will check to be sure you want to clear all the segments of the basal program selected. The Alert screen shown here is displayed. If you do wish to clear all the basal segments of the selected program, scroll to “Clear Program” and press **OK**.

If you do not wish to clear all the basal segments, scroll to “Basal Options” and press **OK**. The BASAL OPTIONS screen will be displayed.

BASAL OPTIONS	
A1-WEEKDAY	
Total	13.60U
Clear	
Edit	
Review	
Go	
Main Menu	

Alert
Clear Program deletes all basal segments in this program.
Clear Program Basal Options

If all segments of your active basal program are set to 0.000U/Hr your pump will not deliver any basal insulin. Each time you wake up your pump, the Alert screen shown here is displayed. If you have turned on the sound for Alerts, you will also be notified by a beep or vibrate. This Alert screen does not progress to higher audible alarms. You have the option to either select “Confirm” to quickly go to the MAIN MENU screen or select “Basal Menu” to reset rates in your active program. For more information see *Chapter 13 in Section I*, pages 75–84.

Alert
Your active basal program is empty 0.000U/Hr
Confirm Basal Menu

## Temporary Basal Feature

This feature allows you to increase your active basal delivery rate for events such as sick days or decrease for events such as exercise. You can decrease your basal rate by 90% (in 10% decrements) or increase your basal rate by 200% (in 10% increments). You can also set to OFF. You can set the duration up to 24 hours in half-hour increments. (If you have activated multiple basal programs in the Setup Advanced menu, all 4 basal program options will be displayed as shown on screen example below, right.)

**⚠ CAUTION:** The lowest basal delivery amount possible is 0.025U/Hr. The highest basal delivery amount possible is 25U/Hr or the Max Basal amount you set in the Setup Advanced menu in chapter 11.




1. From the BASAL MENU, scroll to “Temp”. Press **OK**.

BASAL MENU	
Total	0.00U
Temp	
A1-WEEKDAY	
Main Menu	

BASAL MENU	
Total	0.00U
Temp	
A1-WEEKDAY	
2-other	
3-weekend	
4-exercise	
Main Menu	



## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

2. The “Change” % field will flash to indicate Edit mode. Use the  /  buttons to enter the percentage change desired. Press the  button to exit Edit mode.

A1-WEEKDAY TEMP BASAL
Change: -40%
Duration: 2.0Hr
Go
Main Menu


A1-WEEKDAY TEMP BASAL
Change: 0%
Duration: 4.0Hr
Go
Main Menu

A1-WEEKDAY TEMP BASAL
Change: -40%
Duration: 4.0Hr
Go
Main Menu

3. The “Duration” field is highlighted. Press  to activate Edit mode.

4. Use the  /  buttons to enter the duration desired. Press  to exit Edit mode.


5. “Go” is highlighted. Press  to activate Temp Basal.

 **CAUTION:** The lowest basal delivery amount possible is 0.025U/Hr. When you set a negative temporary basal rate, your pump will beep and display an Alert screen to remind you of the minimum delivery limit. This screen will display once for 5 seconds and give one audible alert (if you turned on Alert sounds in Setup).

Alert
Temp Active Minimum Basal rate limited to 0.025U/Hr

6. The Home screen is displayed and shows your Temp Basal is active, the percentage change, the duration and how much time is left. When the duration of time is complete, your pump will automatically resume the active basal program.

**NOTE:** If you turned on the Temp Basal sound in Setup, your pump will beep once every 30 minutes to remind you of Temp Basal status.

2:27 <sup>PM</sup> 
TEMP BASAL -40% 4.0 Hr Time Left 1.2 Hr Insulin: 105U
Status Menu

## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

## Canceling a Temporary Basal Program

1. From the BASAL MENU, select “TEMP BASAL”. Press **OK**.
2. Details of the current active Temp Basal program will be displayed. Scroll up to “CANCEL” and press **OK**.

Your previously active basal program will be activated and the Home screen will be displayed to show the current rate per hour of the active basal program.

<b>A1-WEEKDAY TEMP ACTIVE</b>
<b>0.675 U/Hr -40% = 0.405 U/Hr Time left 1.2 Hr</b>
<b>CANCEL</b>
<b>Main Menu</b>

**NOTE:** If you Suspend your pump while a Temp Basal program is active, the Temp Basal program will be canceled and an Alert screen will notify you that the Temp Basal program has been canceled. This Alert is displayed once and gives an audible tone once (if you turned on Alert sounds in Setup). Temp Basal is also canceled when you change the battery and/or prime.

<b>Alert</b>
<b>Pump Suspended</b>
<b>If active, Temp Basal &amp; Combo Bolus have been canceled.</b>

**⚠ CAUTION:** When you switch to another basal program or set a Temp Basal, you will most likely be changing the total insulin units delivered over a period of time. Be sure to review the total insulin units before you switch basal programs or set a Temp Basal. Units that are too high or too low may result in a hypoglycemic or hyperglycemic event.

## CHAPTER 6 - USING BASAL PROGRAM FEATURES

## CHAPTER 7 - SUSPEND/RESUME FEATURE

This feature allows you to stop and restart delivery quickly and easily.

It also cancels delivery of any Temp Basal or Bolus, including Combo Bolus that may be currently active. The Combo Bolus feature is covered in *Chapter 10* in *Section I*, pages 49–58.

### Suspending Delivery

MAIN MENU
Bolus
<b>Suspend/Resum</b>
History
Basal
Setup
Prime/Rewind
Status
Home


1. From the MAIN MENU, scroll to “Suspd/Resum” and press **OK**.

Pump Delivery
<b>Suspend</b>
Main Menu

2. “Suspend” is highlighted. Press **OK**.

Alert
Pump Suspended
If active, Temp Basal & Combo Bolus have been canceled.

The screen will display a message reminding you that this mode not only suspends your active basal delivery but also *cancels* any Temp Basal or Combo Bolus that may be active.

2:27 <sup>PM</sup>

<b>SUSPENDED</b>
Basal Rate
0.675U/Hr
Insulin: 105U
Status    Menu

3. The Home screen is then displayed, showing that pump deliveries are suspended.

**NOTE:** Periodically, your pump will beep (or vibrate if that is the setting you selected) to remind you of the Suspend status. If not confirmed, the beeps will progress to high volume in one hour. You can confirm the Warning to reset the audible sequence. See *Chapter 13* in *Section I*, pages 75–84.

Warning
No delivery.
Pump is suspended.
Confirm

## CHAPTER 7 - SUSPEND/RESUME FEATURE

## Resuming Delivery


MAIN MENU
Bolus
<b>Suspend/Resum</b>
History
Basal
Setup
Prime/Rewind
Status
Home

1. From the MAIN MENU, scroll down to “Suspd/Resum” and press **OK**.

Pump Suspended at 1:13PM Oct 2, 2007
<b>Resume</b>
Main Menu

2. “Resume” is highlighted. Press **OK**.

3. The Home screen is displayed to show you that your pump is no longer in Suspend mode. Your previously active basal program is automatically resumed.

2:27 <sup>PM</sup>	
	
Basal Rate 0.025U/Hr Insulin: 105U	
Status	Menu

## CHAPTER 8 - HISTORY FEATURE

Your pump stores important records for your review. You can access your pump's history and view it directly on your pump screen or download it onto your computer using ezManager® Software. Refer to the User Guide included with the software. Certain information on your pump history screens will include a "(P)" or "(M)". This indicates if the action was initiated from your pump (P) or your meter remote (M) when you begin using the devices together as a system (see *Chapter 1 in Section III*, pages 173–174).

Your pump stores basal rates, boluses, alarms and settings. Your pump stores these records indefinitely, even when batteries are removed.

MAIN MENU
Bolus
Suspend/Resum
<b>History</b>
Basal
Setup
Prime/Rewind
Status
Home

From the MAIN MENU, select "History". The HISTORY menu is displayed.

### Bolus History

Your pump displays the last 500 Bolus records.

**NOTE:** BG values and carb values are not displayed on your pump. However, when you download your pump history with ezManager® Software, the BG and carb values (500 total) will be displayed on the ezManager® Software reports.

**1.** From the HISTORY menu, select "Bolus". This screen displays the following:

- Bolus Record number
- Date of bolus
- Time of bolus
- Type of bolus delivered and whether it was initiated from your pump (P) or meter remote (M)
  - Normal
  - Combo
  - Audio
- Amount of bolus programmed and delivered
- Status of bolus
  - ACTIVE
  - COMPLETED
  - CANCELED
- If the bolus was initiated from your pump (P) or meter remote (M)
- If ezBG or ezCarb was used

HISTORY
<b>Bolus</b>
Total Daily Dose (TDD)
Alarm
Prime
Suspend
Basal
Main Menu

BOLUS
Record <b>1</b>
Mar 23, 2007 1:13PM
NORMAL (P)
2.80U of 2.80U
COMPLETED
ezCarb
History Menu

## CHAPTER 8 - HISTORY FEATURE

2. Scroll up to highlight the record field. Press **OK** to activate Review Mode (indicated by flashing cursor).
3. Record 1 indicates the most recent record. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to other records.

BOLUS	
Record	2
Mar 23, 2007 12:13PM	
NORMAL	(P)
0.80U of 3.80U	
CANCELED	(M)
ezBG	
History Menu	

4. When finished reviewing, press **OK** to exit Review Mode.
5. “History Menu” is highlighted. Press **OK** to return to the HISTORY menu.

## Total Daily Dose (TDD) History

Your pump displays the last 120 TDD records.

1. From the HISTORY menu, select “TDD”. This screen displays the following:

- Record number
- Date of record
- If Temp Basal was active on that date
- If Suspend was activated on that date
- Total Bolus for the date
- Total Basal for the date
- Total dose for the date

HISTORY
Bolus
Total Daily Dose (TDD)
Alarm
Prime
Suspend
Basal
Main Menu

TDD	
Record	1
Mar 23, 2007	
Temp	No
Suspend	No
Bolus	6.200U
Basal	0.700U
TOTAL =	6.900U
History Menu	

**NOTE:** Each daily total is the total delivered since midnight.

2. Scroll up to highlight the record field. Press **OK** to activate Review Mode (indicated by flashing cursor).
3. Record 1 indicates the most recent record. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to other records.
4. When finished reviewing, press **OK** to exit Review Mode.
5. “History Menu” is highlighted. Press **OK** to return to the HISTORY menu.

## CHAPTER 8 - HISTORY FEATURE

## Alarm History

Your pump displays the last 30 Alarm records.

**1.** From the HISTORY menu, select “Alarm”. The screen displays the following:

- Record number
- Date of alarm
- Time of alarm
- Alarm Code
- Alarm Type

HISTORY
Bolus
Total Daily Dose (TDD)
<b>Alarm</b>
Prime
Suspend
Basal
Main Menu

ALARM
Record <b>1</b>
Mar 23, 2007 01:13PM
Code XXX-XXX
EMPTY CARTRIDGE
History Menu

**2.** Scroll up to highlight the record field. Press **OK** to activate Review Mode (indicated by flashing cursor).

**3.** Record 1 indicates the most recent record. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to other records.

**4.** When finished reviewing, press **OK** to exit Review Mode.

**5.** “History Menu” is highlighted. Press **OK** to return to the HISTORY menu.

## Prime History

Your pump displays the last 60 Prime and Fill Cannula records. Prime and Fill Cannula records are stored as separate records.

**1.** From the HISTORY menu, select “Prime”. The screen displays the following:

- Record number
- Date of prime
- Time of prime
- Amount of prime

HISTORY
Bolus
Total Daily Dose (TDD)
Alarm
<b>Prime</b>
Suspend
Basal
Main Menu

PRIME
Record <b>1</b>
Mar 23, 2007 01:15PM
Fill Cannula Total 1.0U
History Menu

**2.** Scroll up to highlight the record field. Press **OK** to activate Review Mode (indicated by flashing cursor).

**3.** Record 1 indicates the most recent record. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to other records.

PRIME
Record <b>2</b>
Mar 23, 2007 01:13PM
Primed Total 23.7U
History Menu



## CHAPTER 8 - HISTORY FEATURE

4. When finished reviewing, press **OK** to exit Review Mode.
5. “History Menu” is highlighted. Press **OK** to return to the HISTORY menu.

## Suspend History

Your pump displays the last 30 Suspend records.

1. From the HISTORY menu, select “Suspend”. The screen displays the following:

- Record number
- Date and time pump delivery was suspended
- Date and time pump delivery was resumed

HISTORY
Bolus
Total Daily Dose (TDD)
Alarm
Prime
<b>Suspend</b>
Basal
Main Menu

SUSPEND
Record <b>1</b>
Suspended
Mar 23, 2007 01:13PM
Resumed
Mar 23, 2007 01:13PM
History Menu

2. Scroll up to highlight the record field. Press **OK** to activate Review Mode (indicated by flashing cursor).
3. Record 1 indicates the most recent record. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to other records.
4. When finished reviewing, press **OK** to exit Review Mode.
5. “History Menu” is highlighted. Press **OK** to return to the HISTORY menu.

## Basal History

Your pump displays the last 270 Basal delivery records.

1. From the HISTORY menu, select “Basal”. The screen displays the following:

- Record number
- Date and time basal rate was adjusted
- Basal rate adjustment

HISTORY
Bolus
Total Daily Dose (TDD)
Alarm
Prime
Suspend
<b>Basal</b>
Main Menu

BASAL
Record <b>1</b>
Mar 23, 2007 01:13PM
Rate = 0.670
History Menu

2. Scroll up to highlight the record field. Press **OK** to activate Review Mode (indicated by flashing cursor).
3. Record 1 indicates the most recent record. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to other records.
4. When finished reviewing, press **OK** to exit Review Mode.
5. “History Menu” is highlighted. Press **OK** to return to the HISTORY menu.

---

**CHAPTER 8 - HISTORY FEATURE**

---

**NOTE:** The History records each basal rate change. When no basal is being delivered, the Basal History Record will show 0 units delivered. This can happen for the following reasons:

- Cartridge change
- Battery change
- Suspend
- Alarm
- Basal segment set to 0
- Basal edit screen accessed
- Prime menu accessed
- Loss of prime




## CHAPTER 9 - STATUS FEATURE

This feature gives you easy access to a summary of information about your pump's current programming and performance. There are six Status screens.

1. From the MAIN MENU or from the Home screen, scroll to "Status" and press **OK**.

MAIN MENU
Bolus
Suspend/Resum
History
Basal
Setup
Prime/Rewind
<b>Status</b>
Home

2:27PM	
	
Basal Rate	
0.025U/Hr	
Insulin: 105U	
Status	Menu

### Status Screen 1 – Active Basal

The screen displays the following information:

- Which basal program is currently active
- The 24-hour total for the active basal program
- Units per hour currently being delivered
- Insulin currently remaining in cartridge

STATUS	1
ACTIVE BASAL	
A1-WEEKDAY	
24-Hr Total	
13.60U	
0.675U/Hr	
Insulin: 105U	
Main Menu	

The cursor is flashing on the STATUS 1 screen. Press the **▲** button to move to the STATUS 2 screen or press **OK** to highlight "Main Menu" and exit Status screens.

### Status Screen 2 – IOB, Last Bolus

The screen displays the following information:

- Amount of insulin currently "on board" (IOB). For more information on this feature, see *Chapter 10* in *Section I*, pages 49–58.
- Type and amount of last completed bolus
  - N = Normal
  - C = Combo (normal portion only)
  - A = Audio
- Time and date of last bolus

STATUS	2
IOB=1.70U	
LAST BOLUS	
N 3.30U	
9:55AM	
Jul 8, 2007	
Main Menu	

The cursor is flashing on the STATUS 2 screen. Press the **▲** button to move to the STATUS 3 screen or press **OK** to highlight "Main Menu" and exit Status screens.



## CHAPTER 9 - STATUS FEATURE

## Status Screen 3 – Delivery Today

The screen displays the following information since midnight and up to the current time:

- Insulin type
- If Temp Basal has been active
- If Suspend has been active
- Total bolus amount delivered
- Total basal amount delivered
- Total insulin delivered (*excluding* prime amounts)

STATUS <span>3</span>	
DELIVERY TODAY	
U100	
Temp	No
Suspend	No
Bolus	9.400U
Basal	0.200U
TOTAL =	9.600U
Main Menu	

The cursor is flashing on the STATUS 3 screen. Press the  button to move to the STATUS 4 screen or press  to highlight “Main Menu” and exit Status screens.



## Status Screen 4 – Combo Bolus

The screen displays the following information:

- Most recent Combo Bolus status
  - Active or Completed or Canceled
  - Start date
  - Start time
  - End time
  - Amount delivered (if active, shows amount delivered as of current time)

STATUS <span>4</span>	
COMBO BOLUS CANCELLED	
Mar 23, 2007	
Start	7:23AM
End	7:31AM
Delivered: 3.28/9.00U	
Main Menu	

For more information on Combo Bolus, see *Chapter 10* in *Section I*, pages 49–58.



The cursor is flashing on the STATUS 4 screen. Press the  button to move to the STATUS 5 screen or press  to highlight “Main Menu” and exit Status screens.

## Status Screen 5 – Temp Basal

The screen displays the following information:

- Most recent Temp Basal status
  - Active/Inactive
  - Start date
  - Start time
  - End time
  - % adjustment

STATUS <span>5</span>	
TEMP BASAL ACTIVE	
Mar 23, 2007	
Start	4:00PM
End	6:00PM
Change:	-50%
Main Menu	

The cursor is flashing on the STATUS 5 screen. Press the  button to move to the STATUS 6 screen or press  to highlight “Main Menu” and exit Status screens.

## Status Screen 6 – Codes

The screen displays the following information:

- Software revision
- Last seven digits of the serial number of your pump
- Codes for manufacturer's use

The cursor is flashing on the STATUS 6 screen. Press **OK** to highlight “Main Menu” and exit Status screens.

STATUS CODES	6
REV M=XXX.XX.XX D=XXX P=XXX S/N# 76543-21	
Main Menu	



## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

Now you've made it through the basics! Your pump offers many advanced features that you may find helpful in managing your diabetes. Consult with your health care team to determine which advanced features are appropriate for you.

This chapter tells you how to set up and turn on the advanced features. *Chapter 11 in Section I*, pages 59–72, covers how to use each advanced feature.

You can also use your computer and ezManager® Software to upload settings for Advanced Setup. Refer to the ezManager® User Guide included with the software.

From the MAIN MENU screen, select “Setup”. Then select “Advanced” from the SETUP screen and press **OK**.

MAIN MENU
Bolus
Suspend/Resum
History
Basal
<b>Setup</b>
Prime/Rewind
Status
Home

SETUP
Time/Date
Sound
<b>Advanced</b>
Main Menu

### Setup Advanced Screen 1 – Audio Bolus Feature

This screen allows you to:

- Turn Audio Bolus on or off
- Select the Audio Bolus delivery step size
  - 0.1, 0.5, 1.0, 5.0 Units

**1.** Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to the desired field.

**2.** Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.

**3.** Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting.

**4.** Press **OK** when setting is made.

SETUP ADV 1 AUDIO BOLUS	
Enable	OFF
Delivery Step	0.1U
Home	<b>Next</b>

**NOTE:** If Audio Bolus is activated, you cannot use the side button as a shortcut to Normal Bolus. You can still give a Normal Bolus via the MAIN MENU.

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight “Next”. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**. For more information, see *Chapter 11 in Section I*, pages 59–72.



## Setup Advanced Screen 2 – Advanced Bolus Features and Multiple Basal Programs

This screen allows you to:

- Turn Advanced Bolus Features (ezCarb, ezBG, Combo Bolus) on or off
- Turn personal Reminders feature on or off
- Select bolus delivery speed (NRML (normal): 1U every second or SLOW: 1U every 4 seconds)

SETUP ADV 2	
<b>BOLUS</b>	
Adv. Bolus	OFF
Reminders	OFF
Delivery	NRML
<b>BASAL</b>	
Programs	4
Home	Next

**NOTE:** Users may experience a slight stinging sensation with normal bolus delivery. If this occurs changing the bolus delivery speed to “SLOW” may reduce the stinging sensation.

- Select either 1 basal program or 4 basal programs to be displayed in the BASAL MENU

**NOTE:** If a program other than 1-Weekday is active, you cannot change this setting to display 1 basal program. The Alert screen shown here will be displayed to remind you.

1. Scroll to the desired field.
2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
3. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting.
4. Press **OK** when setting is made.

Alert
1-weekday must be the active program to change the basal display setting.
Confirm

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight “Next”. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

## Setup Advanced Screen 3 – Insulin Limits

This screen allows you to:

- Set maximum basal delivery per hour
- Set maximum bolus amount
- Set maximum daily (24-hour) delivery amount. Your pump checks that total insulin delivery each 24-hour period (running from midnight of the previous day to midnight of the current day) does not exceed this limit.
- Set maximum 2-hour delivery amount. Your pump checks that total insulin delivery over each rolling 2-hour period does not exceed this limit.

SETUP ADV 3 Max LIMITS	
Basal	25.00U/Hr
Bolus	35.00U
Daily	600.00U
2Hr	100.00U
Home	Next

1. Scroll to the desired field.
2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
3. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting.
4. Press **OK** when setting is made.

## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight “Next”. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Should you attempt a delivery that exceeds the limits you have set, your pump will alert you and display a text message. See *Chapter 13 in Section I*, pages 75–84 for additional information.

## Setup Advanced Screen 4 – Language Setup, Display Timeout, Contrast and Battery Type

This screen allows you to:

- Select a different language
- Set the length of time your display stays on before timing out to save battery life
  - 15, 30, 45 or 60 seconds
- Select a contrast setting
- Select Lithium (recommended) or Alkaline battery type. You can also change the battery type on the VERIFY screen when you insert a new battery.

SETUP ADV 4	
Language	ENGLISH
Display Timeout	in 60 secs
Contrast	8
Battery	Lith
Home	Next

1. Scroll to the desired field.
2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
3. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting.
4. Press **OK** when setting is made.

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight “Next”. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

### Contrast Button

Pressing the button on the top of your pump adjusts the contrast. There are three contrast levels: Dim, Default and Bright. To preserve battery life, your pump display will **Auto-dim** when a button is not pressed for half the time your display time out is set. While in Auto-dim mode, you can restore the default contrast level you have set by pressing the **ⓘ** button on top of your pump. Pressing a function button while in Auto-dim mode will restore the default contrast level as well as perform the function of the key. ***If in Call Service Alarm mode, you must use the ⓘ button to restore the default contrast level.***

## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

To return contrast setting to original factory default, press the ▲ button and Ⓞ button at the same time. When the word “Contrast” is displayed on the screen, press any button to return to the default contrast setting.

**NOTE:** When viewing your pump display in bright sunlight, it is recommended you shade the screen or move to a shady area for best visibility.

## Setup Advanced Screen 5 – Auto-OFF Feature

This screen allows you to set your pump to automatically suspend basal delivery and sound an alarm if no buttons are pressed in a user-selected number of hours. This feature can be used as a safeguard in case the user is unconscious.

1. Scroll to the desired field.
2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
3. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to change to desired setting.
4. Press **OK** when setting is made.

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight Next. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

SETUP ADV 5 AUTO OFF	
Enable	OFF
When enabled, suspend in 12 Hr if no buttons are pressed.	
Home	Next

## Setup Advanced Screen 6 – Low Cartridge Warning Setting and Occlusion Sensitivity Setting

This screen allows you to:

- Set your low cartridge warning to alert you at 10, 20, 30, 40 or 50 units remaining
- Set your occlusion detection sensitivity to High (more sensitive) or Low (less sensitive)

1. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to scroll to the desired field.
2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
3. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to change to desired setting.
4. Press **OK** when setting is made.

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight “Next”. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

SETUP ADV 6	
Low Cartridge Warning	20U
Occlusion Sensitivity	L
Home	Next

## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

**NOTE:**

- The Low Cartridge Warning only alerts you one time. For example, if you have it set to 30U and receive an alert, and then change the setting to 20U, it will not alert at 20U until after the next cartridge has been primed.
- If a bolus is delivered which causes a Low Cartridge Warning, your remaining insulin may be less than the Warning screen displays.

Warning	
Low cartridge. 10U or less left.	
Confirm	

## Setup Advanced Screen 7 – Personal Settings - Insulin to Carb (I:C) Ratios

Your health care team may recommend you use different Insulin to Carb (I:C) ratios for different times of day. When you use the ezCarb feature, your pump will automatically select the I:C ratio for the current time of day.

**⚠ WARNING:** Your health care team will determine your personal settings for the bolus calculator feature. Use of incorrect personal settings can result in over or under delivery of insulin.

This screen allows you to:

- Set different I:C ratios for 12 different time slots

**NOTE:** If you set only one ratio, it will be used for the entire 24-hour period.

From the SETUP ADV 7 screen, scroll up to “I:C Ratio”. Press **OK**.

SETUP ADV 7	
I:C Ratio	
ISF	
BG Target	
Home	Next

**1.** The first segment always starts at midnight. The last time slot available is 11:30pm. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to the “1U:” (grams) field.

**2.** Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit Mode.

**3.** Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting.

**4.** Press **OK** when setting is made.

**5.** To move to the next I:C Ratio screen, scroll to “--->” and press **OK**.

I:C Ratio 1 of 12	
Time:	12:00A
1U:	13g
<<---	---->>
Done	Home

**6.** Scroll up to the “Time” field and press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit Mode.

**7.** Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change the segment start time. Press **OK**.

I:C Ratio 2 of 12	
Time:	6:00A
1U:	15g
<<---	---->>
Done	Home

## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

8. Scroll to the “1U:” (grams) field and press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
9. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change the “1U:” (grams) field as desired. Press **OK**. Repeat to set remaining segments per your health care team’s recommendations.

To review your settings, highlight “--->” and press **OK** to scroll through each segment. Confirm the times and setting values are correct.

When finished, scroll to “Done” and press **OK** to return to the SETUP ADV 7 screen.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

## Setup Advanced Screen 7 – Personal Settings - Insulin Sensitivity Factor (ISF)

Your health care team may recommend you use different Insulin Sensitivity Factors (ISFs) for different times of day. When you use the ezCarb or ezBG feature, your pump will automatically select the ISF for the current time of day.

This screen allows you to:

- Set different ISFs for 12 different time slots

**NOTE:** If you set only one ratio, it will be used for the entire 24-hour period.

SETUP ADV 7	
I:C Ratio	
ISF	
BG Target	
Home	Next

From the SETUP ADV 7 screen, scroll up to “ISF”. Press **OK**.

1. The first segment always starts at midnight. The last time slot available is 11:30pm. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to scroll to the “1U:” (mg/dL) field.
2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
3. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting.
4. Press **OK** when setting is made.
5. To move to the next ISF screen, scroll to “--->” and press **OK**.
6. Scroll up to the “Time” field and press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.

ISF 1 of 12	
Time: 12:00A	
1U:	40 mg/dL
<<---- ---->>	
Done	Home

ISF 2 of 12	
Time: 6:00A	
1U:	50 mg/dL
<<---- ---->>	
Done	Home

## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

7. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to change the segment start time. Press **OK**.
8. Scroll to the “1U:” (mg/dL units) field and press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit Mode.
9. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to change the “1U:” (mg/dL units) field as desired. Press **OK**. Repeat to set remaining segments per your health care team’s recommendations.

To review your settings, highlight “--->” and press **OK** to scroll through each segment. Confirm the times and setting values are correct.

When finished, scroll to “Done” and press **OK** to return to the SETUP ADV 7 screen.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

## Setup Advanced Screen 7 – Personal Settings - BG Target Ranges

Your health care team may recommend you use different BG Target ranges for different times of day. When you use the ezCarb or ezBG feature, your pump will automatically select the BG Target range for the current time of day.

This screen allows you to:

- Set different BG Targets and ranges for 12 different time slots

**NOTE:** If you set only one ratio, it will be used for the entire 24-hour period.

SETUP ADV 7	
I:C Ratio	
ISF	
BG Target	
Home	Next

From the SETUP ADV 7 screen, scroll up to “BG Target”. Press **OK**.

1. The first segment always starts at midnight. The last time slot available is 11:30pm. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to scroll to the BG Target field.
2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
3. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to change to desired setting.
4. Press **OK** when setting is made.
5. Scroll to the “+/-”(range) field. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.

BG Target 1 of 12	
Time: 12:00A	
+/-	120 mg/dL 10 mg/dL
<<---->>>>	
Done	Home

BG Target 1 of 12	
Time: 12:00A	
+/-	120 mg/dL 5 mg/dL
<<---->>>>	
Done	Home

## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

**NOTE:** By setting a range (+/-) your pump will not calculate a BG correction dose if your actual BG is within that range. If you prefer to correct to one target number rather than a range, simply set your range to +/- 0. This screen allows you to:

6. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change the range as desired. Press **OK**.
7. To move to the next BG Target screen, scroll to “--->” and press **OK**.
8. Scroll up to the “Time” field and press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
9. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change the segment start time. Press **OK**.
10. Scroll to the BG Target field. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
11. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change to desired setting.
12. Press **OK** when setting is made.
13. Scroll to the “+/-”(range) field. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
14. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to change the range as desired. Press **OK**. Repeat to set remaining segments per your health care team’s recommendations.

BG Target 2 of 12	
Time:	6:00A
+/-	120 mg/dL 10 mg/dL
<<---	---->>
Done	Home

To review your settings, highlight “--->” and press **OK** to scroll through each segment. Confirm the times and setting values are correct.

When finished, scroll to “Done” and press **OK** to return to the SETUP ADV 7 screen.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

## Setup Advanced Screen 8 – Insulin on Board (IOB) Setting

This feature allows you to program the rate at which your body uses your bolus. Even with rapid-acting insulin, your body takes some time to use your entire bolus insulin. When this feature is activated and you give a bolus, your pump will tell you how much Insulin on Board (IOB) is currently remaining and will calculate a decreased bolus dose as an option. This helps to prevent “stacking” insulin and can help reduce your risk of hypoglycemia\*. The duration of insulin action varies from person to person and can vary based on the infusion site you have selected and your activity level, among other factors. Your health care team will give you a recommended duration to program into your pump.

\*Recommended reading for pump users includes:

- *Pumping Insulin*, by John Walsh, PA, CDE and Ruth Roberts, MA
- *Smart Pumping*, by Howard Wolpert, MD

**⚠ WARNING:** This feature is intended for use only with U100 rapid-acting insulin analogs such as Novolog®, Humalog® or Apidra®. If you use an insulin other than Novolog®, Humalog® or Apidra®, Do Not use this feature. Use of any insulin with lesser or greater concentration can result in serious injury or death.

## CHAPTER 10 - ADVANCED FEATURES / SETUP AND ACTIVATION

This screen allows you to:

- Turn the IOB feature on or off
  - Select the duration
1. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to scroll to the desired field.
  2. Press **OK** to change to flashing cursor for Edit mode.
  3. Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to change to desired setting.
  4. Press **OK** when setting is made.

<b>SETUP ADV 8</b>	
<b>Insulin on Board</b>	
<b>IOB-2</b>	<b>OFF</b>
<b>Duration</b>	
<b>4.0 Hr</b>	
<b>Home</b>	<b>Next</b>

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight “Next”. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

**NOTE:** Your pump is constantly tracking IOB, so when you turn on the feature, your pump will immediately take into account the current amount remaining from previous bolus doses within the time frame you’ve selected during set up of the feature.

Points to remember about the IOB feature on your pump

- A curvilinear algorithm is used, which more closely mimics the way drugs decay in the body versus a straight line decay.
- With **BG below target**, IOB amount is displayed and is subtracted from the carb portion of the bolus.
- With **BG within target**, IOB amount is displayed for reference but not subtracted from bolus total.
- With **BG above target**, IOB amount is displayed and is subtracted from BG bolus.



## Setup Advanced Screen 9 – Sick Day Guidelines

During your pump training, your health care team will discuss guidelines to use when you're sick. This is a convenient way to store your basic sick day guidelines as recommended by your health care team. For more information on sick day guidelines, refer to *Chapter 16* in *Section I*, pages 93–94, and contact your health care team.

This screen allows you to:

- Set a BG limit as a reminder for testing when sick
- Set the frequency of checking for ketones when sick
- Set the frequency of checking your BG when sick

To move to the next Setup Advanced screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and highlight “Next”. Press **OK**.

To return to the Home screen, scroll to “Home” and press **OK**.

**NOTE:** This screen is intended as a reference only. Alerts are NOT triggered based on values displayed on this screen.

SETUP ADV 9 Sick days	
BG over	240 mg/dL
Check ketones every	4 Hrs
Check BG every	2 Hrs
Home	Next

## Setup Advanced Screen 10 – Establishing Communication with Your Meter Remote

This screen allows you to activate the RF and pairing features on your pump. When you are ready to begin using your pump and meter remote together as a system, you will need to activate RF communication and pair the devices. See *Chapter 2* in *Section III*, pages 175–184.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

**⚠ CAUTION:** Using the features in this chapter requires an advanced understanding of insulin pump therapy and should not be used without training and advice from your health care team. In order to achieve optimal results, some of these features should only be used once you have tested and fine-tuned your basal rates and your health care team has determined your individual targets and ratios.

**NOTE:** Before using these features, you must turn them on in the Setup Advanced menu. See *Chapter 10* in *Section I*, pages 49–58.

### Audio Bolus and ezBolus

The Audio Bolus feature of the Animas® Insulin Pump allows you to bolus without looking at the screen display. This is convenient if you wear your pump under your clothing. When first using the audio bolus feature, also check the display screen until you are comfortable with the programming steps. If you do not wish to use the Audio Bolus feature, this button serves as a shortcut to the Normal Bolus screen. See *ezBolus*, page 61 in this chapter.

**⚠ CAUTION:** When you first use the Audio Bolus feature, you should always look at the screen to confirm correct programming until you are comfortable with the feature.

1. Turn on Audio Bolus in the Setup Advanced menu and select your preferred step size. See *Chapter 10* in *Section I*, pages 49–58.
2. The Audio Bolus button is the soft rubber button on the end of your pump. Press it once. Your pump will beep (or vibrate) to indicate you've accessed Audio Bolus mode as well as indicate the step size you've set up.

The number of beeps (or vibrate pulses) reminds you of the step size you've set.

- 1 indicates 0.1U step size
- 2 indicates 0.5U step size
- 3 indicates 1.0U step size
- 4 indicates 5.0U step size

3. Press the Audio Bolus button once for each step size you've programmed to reach the desired total amount. For example, if you are using 1.0U step size and you wish to bolus 4 units, press the button 4 times. You will hear a beep tone or vibrate for each button press. If you are using 0.5U step size and you wish to bolus 4 units, press the button 8 times.

Audio bolus Step size= 1.0U/Press
Enter bolus amount <b>0.00U</b>
Press any other key to CANCEL

4. Within 5 seconds, your pump will respond with a number of confirmation beeps equal to the number of times you pressed the Audio Bolus button.

**NOTE:** Do Not press any of the function buttons at this time unless you wish to cancel delivery.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

**5.** Within 5 seconds, your pump will beep twice to “ask” you to confirm that you wish to activate delivery and “Confirm” is displayed on the Audio Bolus screen.

<b>Audio bolus</b>
<p><b>Confirm</b></p> <p><b>3.00U</b></p> <p>Press any other key to CANCEL</p>

**6.** Within 5 seconds, press the button again to activate delivery. Your pump will beep twice to confirm your delivery command. The DELIVERING bolus screen is displayed and your pump will beep once to signal the start of delivery and once to signal end of delivery (if you turned on Normal Bolus Sounds in Setup).

<b>DELIVERING</b>
<p><b>3.00U</b></p> <p>Press any function button to Cancel</p>

If you wish to cancel the Audio Bolus, press any function button (not the contrast button).

**If you cancel a bolus delivery after you’ve activated it, the screen at right will be displayed.** See *Chapter 13* in *Section I*, pages 75–84.

<b>Warning</b>
<p><b>Bolus delivery canceled by user button press.</b></p> <p><b>Delivered: 2.00U of 3.00U</b></p> <p><b>Confirm</b></p>

**NOTE:** If during a bolus delivery your low cartridge level is reached, your pump will not display the warning until after the bolus is completed. So you could possibly have less insulin available than your low cartridge setting.

Example: Your low cartridge warning is set to 10 (units). You have 20 units of insulin remaining and you deliver a 15 unit bolus. The Low cartridge warning appears after bolus is completed and you have only 5 units left – not 10 units. The Wake up screen will show the remaining insulin amount.

The maximum number of Audio Bolus button presses is 20. Therefore, if you’ve set the step size to 0.1U, the maximum audio bolus amount is 2U. If you’ve set the step size at 0.5U, the maximum audio bolus amount is 10U and if your step size is 1.0U, the maximum audio bolus amount is 20U. With a 5.0U step size, the maximum cannot be greater than 35U, which is the maximum amount for any type of bolus.

## ezBolus

If you do not have your Audio Bolus feature turned on, the button on the end of your pump will function as a short cut to the Normal Bolus screen.

1. Press the button on the end once. The Normal Bolus screen is displayed. Program a Normal Bolus as usual.

NORMAL BOLUS
Amount <b>0.00</b> u
Go
Main Menu

## Advanced Bolus Features

- ezCarb
- ezBG
- Combo Bolus
- Reminders

All Advanced Bolus features are activated in the Setup Advanced Menu. See *Chapter 10 in Section I*, pages 49–58. When the Advanced Bolus features and Reminders are activated, the full BOLUS MENU is displayed.

BOLUS MENU
Normal
ezCarb
ezBG
Combo Bolus
Reminders
Main Menu

**⚠ WARNING:** Be sure to review all the values used in bolus calculations to make sure they are correct. You may always adjust the insulin units up or down before you decide to administer your bolus. If you dose an insulin amount that is too high or too low, this may result in a hypoglycemic or hyperglycemic event. Please discuss the bolus calculator feature and all relevant personal settings with your health care professional before using the calculator for the first time.

## ezCarb

This feature allows you to manually enter the number of carbs eaten, and your pump will automatically calculate your bolus dose, based on the I:C ratio, ISF and BG Target range you have entered for the current time of day. Consult your health care team for your personal I:C ratios, ISFs and BG Target ranges. See *Chapter 10 in Section I*, pages 49–58.

If the IOB feature is activated, your pump will calculate a reduced amount for high BG correction boluses and for Carb Boluses if you entered a below-target BG value.

When you use your meter remote to deliver an ezCarb Bolus, you may also select the number of carbs eaten directly from a Food Database stored in your meter remote, see *Chapter 4 in Section III*, pages 187–202. The Food Database is available through an upload to your meter remote from ezManager® Software. For instructions on uploading the Food Database, refer to the ezManager® User Guide included with the software.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

## Entering Carbs Manually

BOLUS MENU	
Normal	
<b>ezCarb</b>	
ezBG	
Combo Bolus	
Reminders	
Main Menu	

1. From the BOLUS MENU, scroll to “ezCarb”. Press **OK**. The ezCarb Home screen is displayed.

2. The cursor will flash on the “Carbs” field to indicate that you can edit the total number of carbs eaten. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to enter the number of carbs. Press **OK**. “Add BG” is highlighted. (See *Adding a BG Bolus to ezCarb*, pages 63–64 in this chapter.)

ezCarb Home	
Carbs:	<b>34g</b>
I:C	1U: 15g
Add BG	
<b>Show Result</b>	
Main Menu	

**NOTE:** The max limit for ezCarb Total is 999g.

3. Check that the grams of carb entered and your I:C ratio at the top of the screen are correct.

- a. If the entries are *correct*, scroll to “Show Result”. Press **OK** and go to Step 5.

- b. If *not correct*, scroll up to highlight the field and press **OK** to activate Edit Mode. Use **▲** / **▼** buttons to enter your I:C ratio and/or change the carb entry. Press **OK**.

ezCarb Home	
Carbs:	34g
I:C	1U: 15g
Add BG	
<b>Show Result</b>	
Main Menu	

4. Scroll down to “Show Result”. Press **OK**.

5. The Bolus Total screen is displayed. The bolus amount field is highlighted and flashing to indicate you can enter the total amount as shown or adjust as needed. Enter your bolus amount. Press **OK**.

Bolus Total	
Carb	2.26U
BG +	0.00U
IOB	--- U
Total =	2.25U
	<b>0.00U</b>
Go	
Type	Normal
Main Menu	

Bolus Total	
Carb	2.26U
BG +	0.00U
IOB	--- U
Total =	2.25U
	<b>2.25U</b>
Go	
Type	Normal
Main Menu	

**NOTE:** Calculated total units will be rounded to the nearest .05 units.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

6. “Go” is highlighted. If you wish to give a Normal Bolus, press **OK** to deliver.

Bolus Total	
Carb	2.26U
BG +	0.00U
IOB	--.-- U
Total =	2.25U
Go	
Type	Combo
Main Menu	

Bolus Total	
Carb	2.26U
BG +	0.00U
IOB	--.-- U
Total =	2.25U
Go	
Type	Normal
Main Menu	

DELIVERING	
2.25U	
Press any function button to Cancel	

7. If you wish to give a Combo Bolus, scroll to the “Type” field and press **OK** to edit.

8. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to select bolus type: “Normal” (default) or “Combo”. Press **OK**.

9. “Go” is highlighted. Press **OK**.

**NOTE:** If you select the Combo Bolus option, the Combo Bolus screen will be displayed. See *Combo Bolus*, pages 67–68 in this chapter for instructions on delivering the Combo Bolus.

## Entering Carbs Using the Food Database

This feature is only available on your meter remote, and can be accessed when delivering an ezCarb Bolus from your meter remote. See *Chapter 4 in Section III*, pages 187–202.

## Adding a BG Bolus to ezCarb

1. On the ezCarb Home screen, enter the number of carbs. Press **OK**.

ezCarb Home	
Carbs:	34g
I:C	1U: 15g
Add BG	
Show Result	
Main Menu	

2. “Add BG” is highlighted. Press **OK**. The BG CORRECT screen is displayed.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

**3.** The “Actual” field is highlighted and flashing to indicate Edit mode. Use the  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\blacktriangledown$  buttons to enter your BG value. Press  $\text{OK}$ . “Show Result” is highlighted.

BG CORRECT		
		mg/dL
Actual		220
Target	-	120
	= +	100
ISF		37 mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		

BG CORRECT		
		mg/dL
Actual		220
Target	-	120
	= +	100
ISF		37 mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		

**4.** Check that the BG Target range and ISF are correct.

**a.** If they are *correct*, press  $\text{OK}$  with “Show Result” highlighted.

**b.** If they are *not correct*, scroll up to highlight the fields and press  $\text{OK}$ . Use the  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\blacktriangledown$  buttons to adjust the values. Press  $\text{OK}$  to exit Edit mode. Scroll down to “Show Result”. Press  $\text{OK}$ .

BG CORRECT		
		mg/dL
Actual		220
Target	-	120
	= +	100
ISF		37 mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		

BG CORRECT		
		mg/dL
Actual		220
Target	-	120
	= +	100
ISF		37 mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		

Bolus Total	
Carb	2.26U
BG +	2.70U
IOB	--- U
Total =	4.95U
Go	0.00U
Type	Normal
Main Menu	

**5.** The Bolus Total screen is displayed and shows the calculated bolus units from your ezCarb Bolus. The bolus amount field is highlighted and flashing, and displays 0.00 units.

**6.** Enter the Bolus amount and press  $\text{OK}$ . “Go” is highlighted. Press  $\text{OK}$  to deliver as a Normal Bolus or scroll to the “Type” field to select Combo Bolus, then select “Go”.

Bolus Total	
Carb	2.26U
BG +	2.70U
IOB	--- U
Total =	4.95U
Go	4.95U
Type	Normal
Main Menu	

If you selected the Combo Bolus option, you will begin the steps for delivering the ezCarb units as a Combo Bolus (see *Combo Bolus*, pages 66–67 in this chapter). The bolus amount you entered on the Bolus Total screen in step 6 will appear in the “Total” field on the first Combo Bolus screen.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

## ezBG

This feature allows you to enter your BG reading and your pump will automatically calculate a BG correction bolus based on the ISF and BG Target range for the current time of day. If the IOB feature is activated, your pump will calculate a reduced dose for high BG correction boluses.

1. From the BOLUS MENU, select “ezBG”. Press the **OK** button.

BOLUS MENU
Normal
ezCarb
<b>ezBG</b>
Combo Bolus
Reminders
Main Menu

2. The “Actual” field will be highlighted and flashing to indicate Edit mode. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to enter your actual BG reading. Press the **OK** button to confirm the entry and exit Edit mode.

ezBG		mg/dL
Actual	-	<b>224</b>
Target	-	120
	= +	104
ISF		37 mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		

ezBG		mg/dL
Actual	-	224
Target	-	<b>120</b>
	= +	104
ISF		37 mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		

3. Check to be sure the BG Target and Insulin Sensitivity Factor (ISF) are correct. Your health care team will give you these values. If you need to edit these fields, scroll up to highlight the field and press **OK** to activate Edit mode. Use **▲** / **▼** buttons to change target. Press **OK** to confirm and to exit Edit mode.

ezBG		mg/dL
Actual	-	224
Target	-	120
	= +	104
ISF		37 mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		

4. “Show Result” is highlighted. Press **OK**.

ezBG		mg/dL
Actual	-	224
Target	-	120
	= +	104
ISF		<b>37</b> mg/dL
Show Result		
Main Menu		



## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

**5.** The ezBG Total screen is displayed with a suggested bolus amount. The bolus amount field is highlighted and flashing to indicate you can enter the total amount as shown or adjust as needed. Enter your bolus amount. Press **OK** to deliver.

ezBG Total		
BG	+	2.81U
IOB		---.--- U
Total	=	2.80U
		<b>0.00U</b>
Go		
Main Menu		

ezBG Total		
BG	+	2.81U
IOB		---.--- U
Total	=	2.80U
		2.80U
Go		
Main Menu		

DELIVERING	
2.80 <sup>U</sup>	
Press any function button to Cancel	

ezBG Total		
BG	+	2.81U
IOB	-	1.00U
Total	=	1.80U
		1.80U
Go		
Main Menu		

**NOTE:** If the IOB feature is activated, your pump will calculate a reduced BG Bolus amount for your review.

**NOTE:** If you enter a BG amount below 70 mg/dL or above 250 mg/dL, your pump will alert you that you've entered an out of range BG. To confirm the Alert, press **OK**. Treat the out of range BG as recommended by your health care team.

Alert	
<b>LOW BG</b>	
Treat low BG.	
No bolus recommended.	
Monitor BG.	
Confirm	

Alert	
<b>HIGH BG</b>	
Treat high BG.	
Check site.	
Check ketones.	
Monitor BG.	
Confirm	

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

## Combo Bolus

The Combo Bolus feature is used to give both a Normal and Extended Bolus. This feature is useful for consumption of high fat meals such as pizza, if you will be “grazing” over a few hours or if you have gastroparesis. You can program part of your bolus amount to be delivered immediately and part of it to be delivered slowly over the course of up to 12 hours. Your health care team can help you determine the “split” of Normal to Extended insulin amounts, as well as the duration that is most appropriate for you.

BOLUS MENU
Normal
ezCarb
ezBG
<b>Combo Bolus</b>
Reminders
Main Menu

**1.** From the BOLUS MENU, select “Combo Bolus”. If you used the ezCarb Bolus option to calculate a bolus and chose to deliver it as a Combo Bolus, you will begin at the Combo Bolus screen in step 2.

**2.** Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to enter the Total bolus amount. Press **OK**. “Go” is highlighted. The factory default setting for Duration is 30 minutes, and the Ratio is 0% Normal and 100% Extended. If these settings are appropriate, press **OK** to deliver.

Combo Bolus	
Total	<b>8.50U</b>
Duration	0.5Hr
Normal: Extend	
0: 100%	
0.00: 0.00U	
Go	
Main Menu	

Combo Bolus	
Total	8.50U
Duration	<b>4.0Hr</b>
Normal: Extend	
30: 70%	
2.55: 5.95U	
Go	
Main Menu	

**3.** To change either the Duration or Ratio, scroll up to the desired field and press **OK** to activate Edit mode.

**4.** Use the ▲ / ▼ buttons to change settings. As you change the Ratio by percentage, the amount in units is automatically changed. *You cannot change the ratio by units, only by percentage.*

Combo Bolus	
Total	8.50U
Duration	0.5Hr
Normal: Extend	
<b>30: 70%</b>	
2.55: 5.95U	
Go	
Main Menu	


**5.** When settings are correct, press **OK** to confirm and exit Edit Mode.

**NOTE:** Your pump is “smart”; it will remember your last duration and the ratio (as percentages) you programmed. So if you use the same duration and ratio for certain types of meals, you need only change the total bolus amount the next time you use this feature. However, the last programmed Combo Bolus settings will be cleared each time you change the battery.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

6. Scroll to “Go” and press **OK** to activate. The Home screen shows Combo Bolus active.

Combo Bolus	
Total	8.50U
Duration	4.0Hr
Normal: Extend	
30: 70%	
2.55: 5.95U	
<b>Go</b>	
Main Menu	

2:27 <sup>PM</sup>	
	
BOLUS ACTIVE	
Basal Rate	
0.675U/Hr	
Insulin: 105U	
Status	Menu

Combo Bolus ACTIVE	
Duration	0.0 : 4.0Hrs
Delivered	2.55U : 8.50U
<b>CANCEL</b>	
Main Menu	

To *cancel* an active Combo Bolus from the BOLUS MENU, select “Combo Bolus”. Details of the active Combo Bolus will be displayed.

Scroll to “CANCEL” and press **OK** to cancel the Combo Bolus.

**NOTE:** If you Suspend your pump, any active Combo Bolus will also be canceled and the screen display will alert you. Combo Bolus is also canceled when you change the battery and/or prime your pump.

## Reminders

This feature allows you to set personal reminders. You can set two bolus reminders for times of day, and one reminder to check BG at a certain time after a bolus. Confirm the Reminder by pressing **OK**. Once you’ve confirmed the Reminder, you will not be alerted again.

### Bolus Reminders for Time of Day

BOLUS MENU	
Normal	
ezCarb	
ezBG	
Combo Bolus	
<b>Reminders</b>	
Main Menu	

1. From the BOLUS MENU, select “Reminders”. Press **OK**.

REMINDERS	
Reminder-1	<b>OFF</b>
Time =	12:00PM
Reminder-2	OFF
Time =	12:00PM
BG Check	OFF
After Bolus =	1 Hr
Main Menu	

2. The “Reminder-1” field will be highlighted with a flashing cursor to indicate Edit mode. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to turn on or off. Press **OK** to confirm and exit Edit mode.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

3. The “Time” field for this reminder will be highlighted. Press **OK** to activate Edit mode. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to enter the time you wish a reminder to sound (or vibrate, if that is the setting you selected in the SETUP SOUND menu). Press **OK** to confirm your setting and exit Edit mode. When the feature is turned on, your pump will display the “Reminder” screen on the right at the selected time of day.

REMINDERS	
Reminder-1	OFF
Time =	12:00PM
Reminder-2	OFF
Time =	12:00PM
BG Check	OFF
After Bolus =	1 Hr
Main Menu	

Reminder	
12:00PM	
Confirm	

4. Repeat for the Reminder 2.

## BG Check Reminder

REMINDERS	
Reminder-1	OFF
Time =	12:00PM
Reminder-2	OFF
Time =	12:00PM
BG Check	OFF
After Bolus =	1 Hr
Main Menu	

1. From the REMINDERS menu, select “BG Check”. Press **OK** to activate Edit mode to turn this reminder on or off. Press **OK** to confirm and exit Edit mode.

REMINDERS	
Reminder-1	OFF
Time =	12:00PM
Reminder-2	OFF
Time =	12:00PM
BG Check	ON
After Bolus =	1 Hr
Main Menu	

2. Scroll down to highlight the “After Bolus” field. Press **OK** to select the field and activate Edit mode. Use the **▲** / **▼** buttons to enter how long after a Normal Bolus you wish your pump to sound (or vibrate) to remind you to check your BG. You can select a reminder time of 1, 2, 3 or 4 hours.

BG Reminder	
Check BG in 1 Hr	
Confirm	

When this feature is turned on, your pump will display the “Check BG” screen at the reminder time you set. On this screen you can select a different reminder time (1,2,3, or 4 hours), or opt not to be reminded by entering 0.

Reminder	
Check BG	
Last bolus 12:15PM	
Confirm	

**NOTE:** When you enter a time, your pump will sound a reminder and display this screen at that time after any Normal Bolus is programmed, including the Normal portion of a Combo Bolus. If you program an Extended Bolus only, the reminder will not sound.

3. When finished setting reminders, scroll to “Main Menu” to display the MAIN MENU.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

## Delivery Speed - Bolus

On rare occasions, usually with very large boluses, users may experience a slight stinging sensation with rapid bolus delivery. If this is a concern, you can set the bolus delivery speed to slow to accommodate your needs. If you use the slow setting, your pump will pause approximately 4 seconds in between delivery of each unit of insulin programmed.

## Multiple Basal Programs

This feature allows 4 different Basal programs to show on your “Basal Menu” screen. Users find this feature beneficial if their activity level is different during the week than on weekends. Switching work shifts at work is another reason to use multiple basal programs. Some use a different basal program during menstruation. An “A” will appear to the left of the basal program that is currently active.

BASAL MENU	
Total	13.60U
Temp	
A1-WEEKDAY	
2-other	
3-weekend	
4-exercise	
Main Menu	

**NOTE:** If a program other than 1-Weekday is active, you cannot change this setting to display 1 basal program. The Alert screen shown here will pop up to remind you.

Alert
1-weekday must be the active program to change the basal display setting.
Confirm

## IOB

Even with rapid-acting insulin, your body takes some time to use the entire bolus amount. If you have activated this feature, your pump will track the bolus insulin remaining in your system - IOB - and calculate a suggested lower BG correction bolus dose. The lower dose is only recommended if you use the ezBG feature or if you add a BG bolus to an ezCarb bolus. For this feature to give optimal results, you should always use either ezBG or the Add BG feature during ezCarb programming when entering a BG correction bolus.

Bolus Total		
Carb		2.25U
BG	+	2.70U
IOB	-	1.00U
Total	=	3.95U
3.95U		
Go		
Type	Normal	
Main Menu		

**⚠ CAUTION:** Your health care team will give you recommendations specific to your plan of treatment.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

In the examples shown here, the IOB amount is subtracted from the BOLUS TOTAL screen and the ezBG Total screen.

ezBG Total		
BG	+	2.81U
IOB	-	1.00U
Total	=	1.80U
		1.80U
Go		
Main Menu		

### NOTE:

- When you replace the battery, the IOB amount is cleared.
- Your pump constantly tracks IOB. If you've given a bolus before turning on the feature, your pump will show the remaining amount from that bolus as IOB immediately.

## Sick Day Guidelines

To review your basic sick day guidelines, refer to this screen. For more information on sick day guidelines, refer to *Chapter 15 in Section I*, pages 91–92, and contact your health care team.

1. From the SETUP menu, select “Advanced”.
2. Scroll to the Setup Advanced Screen 9.
3. Enter or review the guidelines as recommended by your health care team.

SETUP ADV 9 Sick days	
BG over	240 mg/dL
Check ketones every	4 Hrs
Check BG every	2 Hrs
Home	Next

## Establishing Communication with your Meter Remote

When you are ready to begin using your pump and meter remote together as a system, you will need to activate RF communication and pair the devices. See *Chapter 2 in Section III*, pages 175–184.

## CHAPTER 11 - USING ADVANCED FEATURES

## CHAPTER 12 - CARE AND MAINTENANCE

### The Vents

Your pump features a redundant Vent Safety System. Vents serve two purposes. First, they allow air to enter and exit your pump so that pressure is equalized under a variety of environmental circumstances, such as changes in altitude. Second, the vents are backed by a special membrane, which keeps water from entering your pump.

### Battery Cap with O-ring and Vent

Your battery cap contains an o-ring and vent. There is a tiny hole backed by a membrane, which allows air to pass through but prevents water from entering. The o-ring helps to keep your pump waterproof. It is recommended that you change the battery cap/vent once a year. If you work in a dusty environment such as a construction site, mill, cement factory, etc., or if you are a frequent swimmer, you should change your battery cap every 6 months. You can call Animas® to order an extra battery cap.



**⚠ WARNING:** Under no circumstances should you introduce any kind of sharp object into the vent openings to clean them. Doing so could compromise your pump's waterproof capabilities. If at any time you suspect the vent opening is clogged, replace the battery cap.

### Cleaning

**⚠ CAUTION:** Do Not use household or industrial cleaners, chemicals, solvents, bleach, scouring pads or sharp instruments to clean your pump. Never put your pump in the dishwasher or use very hot water to clean it. Use only a very mild detergent (for example a drop of liquid soap in a glass of water) and a lint-free cloth.

Never put your pump in a microwave oven or baking oven to dry it. Use a soft towel.

Never clean the battery or insulin cartridge compartments.

### General Wear and Tear

If you drop your pump or it has been hit against something hard, inspect it to be sure it is still working properly. Check that the display screen is working and clear, that the cartridge cap, battery cap and infusion set are properly in place. Check for leaks around the cartridge by wrapping a piece of tissue around the connection area. Cracks, chips or damage to your pump may impact the battery contact and/or the waterproof feature of your pump. Call our Customer Service representatives at 1-999-999-9999 if you identify or suspect your pump is damaged. They will help determine if your pump should be replaced.



## CHAPTER 12 - CARE AND MAINTENANCE

### Disposal

International and US regulations require controlled disposal of devices such as insulin pumps.

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental regulations.


## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

### Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

Your pump has a progressive warnings and alarms safety system. This means if you do not confirm the warning or alarm, it will progress to the sweep alarm with vibrate within one hour. At the high volume stage, if you do not confirm the warning or alarm, the sweep alarm will begin and will not stop until appropriate action is taken.

**NOTE:** Your pump uses battery power to notify you of alerts, warnings, and alarms. If you do not confirm the notification, your pump will continue to use battery power as the notifications repeat and progress. This will result in reduced battery life and the Replace Battery Alarm screen appearing sooner than expected.

Additionally, certain warnings (e.g., Low Cartridge Warning, Occlusion Alarm) take precedence over less critical ones (e.g., Low Battery Warning). This means if you do not confirm the more critical warning, battery life will be reduced and your pump may skip the Low Battery Warning and go directly to the Replace Battery Alarm, or battery life will end before a Replace Battery Alarm is displayed.

Alerts are automatically displayed to remind you of a function that you've set or a condition that exists. Warnings are triggered for a variety of reasons. They require you to confirm the warning by pressing  and/or taking action to address the warning. Alarms are triggered by several conditions. All require you to address the alarm by taking appropriate action in order to clear the alarm condition.

♪ - Indicates that this alert, warning or alarm can play a tune as the initial notification for medium and high volume settings. The pump default for sounds at the low volume setting is a factory-set sound and cannot be modified with ezManager® Software.

**IMPORTANT:** Many of the following pump alerts, warnings and alarms will also sound and/or display on your meter remote, once you begin using the devices together as a system. See *Chapter 6 in Section III, pages 207–216* for a complete list.

**NOTE:** Alarms, warnings and alerts will display actual insulin units during pump operation, rather than the “XX” or “XXX” units displayed on some of the screens in this list.

<b>Alert:</b> Active Basal Program Empty	
<b>Cause</b>	Empty basal program activated.
<b>Effect</b>	No basal deliveries.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed once <b>until confirmed or until pump goes to sleep</b> and each time manually awakened.
<b>Action</b>	None required but can confirm or select Basal Menu.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, one time and each time manually awakened. No progression.

<b>Alert</b>
<b>Your active basal program is empty. 0.000U/Hr</b>
<b>Confirm Basal Menu</b>

## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

<b>Alert:</b> Temp Basal Minimum Rate	
<b>Cause</b>	Negative Temp Basal activated.
<b>Effect</b>	Basal delivery will not go below 0.025U/Hr.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed once for 3 seconds.
<b>Action</b>	None required.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, one time. No progression.

<b>Alert</b>
<b>Temp Active Minimum Basal rate limited to 0.025U/Hr</b>

<b>Alert:</b> Suspend (Temp Basal/Combo Bolus Canceled)	
<b>Cause</b>	Pump suspended
<b>Effect</b>	Any active Temp Basal/Combo Bolus canceled.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed once for 3 seconds.
<b>Action</b>	None required.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, one time. No progression.


<b>Alert</b>
<b>Pump Suspended</b>
<b>If active, Temp Basal &amp; Combo Bolus have been canceled.</b>


<b>Alert:</b> Low BG 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	BG entry below 70 mg/dL.
<b>Effect</b>	Requires user confirmation to continue.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed until confirmed or until pump goes to sleep.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, one time. No progression.

<b>Alert</b>
<b>LOW BG</b> Treat low BG. No bolus recommended. Monitor BG.
<b>Confirm</b>


## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS


## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms


<b>Alert:</b> High BG 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	BG entry above 250 mg/dL.
<b>Effect</b>	Requires user confirmation to continue.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed until confirmed or until pump goes to sleep.
<b>Action</b>	Press  to confirm.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, one time. No progression.

<b>Alert</b>
<b>HIGH BG</b> Treat high BG. Check site. Check ketones. Monitor BG.
<b>Confirm</b> 

<b>Alert:</b> Clear Program Basal Segments	
<b>Cause</b>	Clear command selected from BASAL OPTIONS screen.
<b>Effect</b>	Requires user confirmation to continue.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed until one of the two options is selected or until pump goes to sleep.
<b>Action</b>	Select “Clear Program” or “Basal Options”.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, one time.

<b>Alert</b>
<b>Clear Program</b> deletes all basal segments in this program.
<b>Clear Program Basal Options</b> 

<b>Alert:</b> Basal Program Display Change 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Changing display of basals from 4 to 1 but program 1 is not currently active.
<b>Effect</b>	Requires user confirmation to continue.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed until confirmed or until pump goes to sleep.
<b>Action</b>	Press  to confirm.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, one time.

<b>Alert</b>
<b>1-weekday</b> must be the active program to change the basal display setting.
<b>Confirm</b> 

## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

<b>Warning:</b> Basal Delivery Suspended 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Basal Edit was not saved.
<b>Effect</b>	Basal delivery stopped.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed when manually awakened until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to select “Edit Basal”. Review basal edits and select “Save/Review”.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
Basal edit not saved. Basal delivery suspended.
<b>Edit Basal</b>

<b>Warning:</b> Suspend 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Pump suspended manually.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed each time pump is awakened until confirmed and once every 15 minutes until action is taken.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Resume delivery.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, once every 15 min. No progression if confirmed each time displayed. Sweep/vibe within one hour if not confirmed.



<b>Warning</b>
No delivery.  Pump is suspended.
<b>Confirm</b>


<b>Warning:</b> No Cartridge Detected, Deliveries Disabled 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	No cartridge detected after “Load cartridge” step during Rewind/Prime.
<b>Effect</b>	No deliveries.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed when manually awakened until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Be sure Rewind/Prime sequence is completed with cartridge properly in place.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, once every 3 min. No progression if confirmed each time displayed. Sweep/vibe within one hour if not confirmed.



<b>Warning</b>
No cartridge detected.  Delivery disabled.
<b>Confirm</b>


## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS



## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms


<b>Warning:</b> Low Battery 	
<b>Cause</b>	Battery life will only last a minimum of 30 minutes.
<b>Effect</b>	Deliveries continue.
<b>Message</b>	Displays when pump is awake until confirmed. Displays when triggered by event (such as bolus) & when manually awakened.
<b>Action</b>	Press  to confirm. Insert new battery.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Low battery.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> 

<b>Warning:</b> Low Cartridge 	
<b>Cause</b>	Low insulin level reached.
<b>Effect</b>	Deliveries may continue until Empty Cartridge alarm is triggered.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed when manually awakened until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press  to confirm. Replace with filled cartridge.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Low cartridge XX U or less left.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> 

<b>Warning:</b> Exceeds Max Bolus 	
<b>Cause</b>	Audio bolus delivery exceeds user-set maximum.
<b>Effect</b>	Bolus delivery stops.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed when manually awakened until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press  to confirm. Reprogram max bolus amount in the Setup Advanced menu.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Exceeds max bolus XX.XX U.</b>
<b>No bolus delivery.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> 

## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

<b>Warning:</b> Exceeds Max TDD 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Bolus delivery exceeds user-set maximum.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop until action is taken. Any Combo Bolus or Temp Basal is temporarily suspended.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed when manually awakened until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Reprogram max TDD amount in the Setup Advanced menu. If the Warning is not confirmed by the time your pump clock passes midnight, the message will continue to be displayed, but any Combo Bolus or Temp Basal that is currently suspended will resume.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Exceeds max TDD XXX U.</b>
<b>No delivery.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

<b>Warning:</b> Exceeds Max Basal 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Basal delivery rate (or Temp Basal delivery) exceeds user-set maximum.
<b>Effect</b>	Basal delivery stops.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed when awakened (by basal delivery attempt every 3 min. or manually) until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Reprogram Max Basal amount in the Setup Advanced menu (or reprogram Temp Basal).
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Exceeds max basal XXX U/Hr.</b>
<b>No basal delivery.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

<b>Warning:</b> Exceeds Max 2-hour Delivery	
<b>Cause</b>	Combined basal and bolus delivery exceeds user-set 2-hour maximum.
<b>Effect</b>	Insulin delivery stops.
<b>Message</b>	Displayed when manually awakened until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Reprogram Max 2-Hr amount in the Setup Advanced menu.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Exceeds max 2 Hr XX U.</b>
<b>No delivery.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

<b>Warning:</b> Delivery Canceled due to Low Cartridge	
<b>Cause</b>	Basal or Bolus delivery exceeds insulin remaining in cartridge.
<b>Effect</b>	Basal or Bolus delivery stopped.
<b>Message</b>	Once per occurrence and each time awakened until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Replace with full cartridge.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Delivery canceled due to low cartridge.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

<b>Warning:</b> No Prime, No Delivery 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Pump is not primed.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop.
<b>Message</b>	Every 3 minutes or when awakened manually.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Disconnect, reprime.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Pump is not primed. No delivery.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>



## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

<b>Warning:</b> Bolus Delivery Canceled 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	User pressed function button on pump during bolus delivery.
<b>Effect</b>	Bolus delivery stopped.
<b>Message</b>	Every 3 minutes.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. If button was pressed accidentally, repeat steps to deliver remaining insulin units.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Bolus delivery canceled by user button press.</b>
<b>Delivered:</b> X.XX U of X.XX U
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

<b>Warning:</b> Battery Change Requires Rewind Prime 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Prime attempted without rewind.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stopped.
<b>Message</b>	Every 3 minutes or when awakened manually.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Rewind and prime.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.

<b>Warning</b>
<b>Battery change requires Rewind-Prime.</b>
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

<b>Alarm:</b> Occlusion 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Occlusion detected.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop.
<b>Message</b>	Continuous until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Disconnect and prime to clear occlusion. Option to select Suspend (see Suspend Warning screen, page 78).
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour. (Once confirmed, No Prime warning triggered, see No Prime Warning screen, page 81.)

<b>ALARM</b>
<b>OCCUSION DETECTED</b>
<b>No delivery.</b>
<b>Suspend Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

<b>Alarm:</b> Empty Cartridge 🎵	
<b>Cause</b>	Cartridge empty.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop.
<b>Message</b>	Continuous until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Replace with full cartridge. Option to select “Suspend” (see Suspend Warning screen, page 78).
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User selected, every 3 minutes until confirmed. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour. (Once confirmed, No Prime warning triggered, see No Prime Warning screen, page 81.)

<b>ALARM</b>
<b>EMPTY CARTRIDGE</b> No delivery. Replace cartridge.
<b>Suspend</b> <b>Confirm</b>

<b>Alarm:</b> Replace Battery	
<b>Cause</b>	Battery either has minimum 3 minutes left or battery is dead.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop.
<b>Message</b>	Continuous until battery is removed.
<b>Action</b>	Remove battery to silence alarm. Insert new battery.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	MAX volume every 3 minutes until action taken. If not confirmed, will progress to 4 long tones/vib.


<b>ALARM</b>
<b>REPLACE BATTERY</b> No delivery.
<b>Remove battery to silence the alarm.</b>

## CHAPTER 13 - SAFETY SYSTEM AND ALARMS

## Alerts, Warnings and Alarms

<b>Alarm:</b> Call Service	
<b>Cause</b>	Hardware or software problem detected.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop.
<b>Message</b>	Continuous until battery is removed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to silence alarm for 30 minutes (alarm can only be silenced once). Call Customer Service at 1-999-999-9999.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	User-selected, every 3 minutes. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour.
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Some Call Service Alarms have a unique sound/vibration sequence and cannot be silenced by pressing <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>For these Alarms the usual progression is replaced by 3 chirps/vib repeated every 9 minutes for the first half hour. This is followed by 4 long tones/vib after that.</p>	

<b>ALARM</b>
<b>CALL SERVICE</b>
No delivery. 054-0108
Remove battery to silence the alarm.

<b>Alarm:</b> Auto-Off 	
<b>Cause</b>	Suspended due to no key press in user-set time period.
<b>Effect</b>	All deliveries stop.
<b>Message</b>	Continuous until confirmed.
<b>Action</b>	Press <b>OK</b> to confirm. Adjust time period in the Setup Advanced menu.
<b>Beeps/Vib</b>	MAX volume every 3 minutes. If not confirmed, progresses to sweep/vibe within one hour. (Once confirmed, No Prime warning triggered, see No Prime Warning screen, page 81.)

<b>ALARM</b>
<b>AUTO-OFF</b>
No delivery.
No button presses in last XX hours.
<b>Confirm</b> <input type="text"/>

## CHAPTER 14 - TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDELINES

It's a good idea to set up a troubleshooting procedure to use anytime you suspect something might be wrong. Work with your health care team to establish guidelines\* in the event of a problem.

### Hypoglycemia

**⚠ WARNING:** Low blood glucose is a risk for anyone using insulin therapy. You may experience one or more of the following symptoms:

- Shakiness; rapid heart rate; nervousness; perspiration; cold, clammy skin; weakness; blurred or double vision; sudden hunger; tingling in your hands, lips, or tongue; headache and confusion.
- If you experience symptoms of hypoglycemia, you should immediately eat a quick-acting carbohydrate (glucose tablets, juice, or hard candy).
- If your BG is abnormally low, Do Not attempt to program your pump yourself. Get help.
- Treat hypoglycemia immediately

#### Rule of 15

1. Consume 15 grams of quick-acting carbohydrate
2. Wait 15 minutes
3. Recheck BG
4. If BG is < 70 mg/dL, repeat above

### Troubleshooting hypoglycemia:

#### INSULIN PUMP

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF LOW BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Basal rate programmed incorrectly	Check times and rates, remember to review basal programs when making any changes.
Clock time incorrect	Reset clock to current time, being careful to check AM & PM.
Pump exposed to MRI	Disconnect from pump. Call Customer Service at 1-999-999-9999

\* Walsh JA & Roberts R, Pumping Insulin. 2006. San Diego: Torrey Pine Press.

## CHAPTER 14 - TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDELINES

## Troubleshooting hypoglycemia:

## FOOD INTAKE

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF LOW BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Bolus too large	Check bolus amounts and times. Bolus only enough to lower your BG to normal level.
Low carbohydrate intake for bolus	Measure carbohydrates accurately. See dietitian for carb counting review. May need recalculation of I:C ratio; consult with health care team.
Improper timing of bolus	Match timing of bolus with intake of food. Check BG prior to meal bolus and adjust accordingly.
Alcohol consumption	May cause hypoglycemia. Eat food when drinking alcohol. Be cautious with bedtime bolus. Always check BG before going to bed. Check BG at 3 am. Consult health care team.

## ACTIVITY

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF LOW BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Did not Suspend pump or activate Temp Basal	Consult health care team for guidelines for use of Temp Basal rate during exercise.
Low carbohydrate intake prior to exercise	If not decreasing insulin prior to exercise, may need to eat foods containing carbohydrate prior to exercise.
Unplanned activity (shopping)	If BG is <100 mg/dL, eat snack prior to exercise. Frequent BG testing before, during and after any activity.
Long or intensive exercise	Effects of exercise can be present for hours after activity has stopped. Consult with health care team for specific guidelines.

## Preventing hypoglycemia:

- Check BG a minimum of four times a day, and more frequently with exercise.
- Keep accurate track of carbohydrates in the foods you eat.
- Consult your health care professional if you are experiencing frequent hypoglycemia.

If you experience frequent or severe episodes of hypoglycemia, contact your health care team. It may be necessary to adjust your basal rates, bolus doses, or review your BG Target goals, along with your daily regimen of food and exercise. If you have a low BG level (hypoglycemia), follow the routine established for you by your health care team.

- It is important to monitor your BG frequently, including periodic checks at 3:00 AM.
- Investigate the cause of hypoglycemia.

## Hyperglycemia

Because your pump uses only rapid-acting insulin, you will not have a reserve of long-acting insulin in your body. This means that any interruption in the delivery of insulin by your pump can quickly result in a sharp rise of your BG levels.

Hyperglycemia (high BG) can occur within two to four hours after insulin delivery stops, and DKA (diabetic ketoacidosis) can develop within four to ten hours.

Several things can cause a high BG reading. The most common problems and causes of high BG are listed in the following table, as are some suggested solutions.

## CHAPTER 14 - TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDELINES

## Troubleshooting hyperglycemia:

## INFUSION SET

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF HIGH BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Redness, irritation, inflammation, swelling, discharge or discomfort	Change infusion set tubing and site. Contact health care team.
Bump or nodule at infusion site	Change infusion set and rotate sites. Avoid this area for site selection.
Scar tissue	Avoid this area for site selection.
Catheter inserted in area of friction	Avoid waistline and friction areas.
Kink in tubing/catheter	Change infusion set tubing and site.
Infusion set not primed (air in tubing)	Disconnect tubing from body. Prime tubing completely.

## INSULIN

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF HIGH BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Cloudy, clumpy, crystallized, expired or insulin exposed to extreme temperatures	Remove infusion set and cartridge and discard. Use new insulin vial.

## FOOD INTAKE

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF HIGH BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Bolus insufficient or omitted	Review carbohydrate counting and I:C ratio settings.
High protein or fat intake	Consult dietitian; may need to count protein and fat.
Long meal (holiday), continuous snacking, slowly absorbed food (high fiber), delayed digestion (gastroparesis)	Consult health care team. May need to use extended bolus or combination bolus option.
Improper bolus timing	Consult health care team.

## CHAPTER 14 - TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDELINES

## Troubleshooting hyperglycemia:

## ACTIVITY

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF HIGH BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Less activity	Use Temp Basal increase. Consult health care team.
Overuse of Temp Basal reduction	Record amount of time for changes. Frequent BG testing to document changes.
BG > 250 mg/dL with ketones before exercise	<b>BG will increase with exercise when ketones are present. Do Not exercise when ketones are present. Consult health care team for exercise guidelines.</b>

**⚠ CAUTION:** Infusion set should be changed every 2 to 3 days or as recommended by your health care team.

Always use clean technique!

Notify health care team with signs or symptoms of infection!

## OTHER

POSSIBLE CAUSE OF HIGH BG	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Medications (steroids, terbutaline, other hormone treatments)	Inform health care team of all medication changes or additions.
Infection, illness, virus	Refer to Sick Day Management Guidelines.
Pre-menstrual cycle	Consult health care team. May need to use Temp Basal or set additional Basal Program.
Pregnancy	Insulin requirements may increase in later trimesters. Consult health care team.
Weight changes	May need recalculation of basal or bolus doses. Consult health care team.



## CHAPTER 14 - TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDELINES

**⚠ WARNING: Consult your health care team before making any changes in your basal rates, bolus ratios or correction factor.**

**When in doubt, change it out! 1. Follow guidelines provided by your health care team. 2. Change infusion set. 3. Check for ketones. 4. Take rapid-acting insulin by injection.**

## Problems with Infusion Sets, Sites and Cartridge

A number of problems can occur with infusion sets and sites, the most common of which are listed in the following table, along with some suggested solutions.

POSSIBLE PROBLEMS	SUGGESTED SOLUTION
Air bubbles in tubing	Always fill your pump cartridge with room temperature insulin. Check Luer lock connection and tubing; change infusion set if needed. If using a disconnect set, remove the set from your infusion site and prime the bubbles out. Check that cartridge plunger is straight and the cartridge is not filled with more than 2.0 mL of insulin.
Kinked tubing	Straighten tubing if needed; replace infusion set if needed.
Dislodged needle or cannula	Change infusion set and site. Consider using different tape, dressing or infusion set. A cannula cannot be pushed back into skin successfully.
Blood in tubing (insulin looks pink or red)	Change infusion set and site. Check needle/cannula angle at new infusion site.
Insulin leak	Check Luer lock connection by wrapping a tissue around it to check for moisture; tighten or change cartridge and infusion set if needed. Check that cartridge is not filled with more than 2.0 mL of insulin.
Redness, tenderness, lumps, itching, warmth, discharge	Change infusion set and site; use clean technique. Treat old site for infection if necessary. Consult health care team.
Cartridge Reused	<b>Do Not reuse cartridge. Cartridge is for single use only.</b>

## DKA (Diabetic Ketoacidosis)

Hyperglycemia can lead to DKA. If your BG is above 250 mg/dL, **check blood or urine ketones per your health care team**. Remember, the first signs of DKA are often nausea and vomiting. Also remember that because you no longer have long-acting insulin in your system, DKA can develop quickly if you ignore and/or fail to troubleshoot potential problems.

## CHAPTER 15 - SICK DAY GUIDELINES

During periods of minor illness\*, it may be more difficult to maintain good control of your diabetes. Examples of minor illness are: dental surgery, colds, nausea/vomiting, sore throat, mild infections, diarrhea, fever. However, you should call your health care team if:

- Illness persists without improvement for 24-48 hours.
- Temperature rises above 100° Fahrenheit.
- Vomiting or diarrhea continues longer than 4 hours.
- There are moderate to large amounts of ketones in urine.
- BG levels continue to run less than 60 mg/dL or above 250 mg/dL (above 130 mg/dL during pregnancy) after taking extra bolus doses as prearranged by your health care team.
- You show signs of ketoacidosis, dehydration or other serious problems such as: increased drowsiness, abdominal or chest pain, difficulty breathing, fruity odor to the breath, dry cracked lips, mouth or tongue.
- Any uncertainty as to what to do to take care of yourself.

**Never omit your insulin!** If you are ill and cannot eat, your need for insulin continues and may also increase.

- Continue your usual basal dose of insulin along with bolus insulin to cover food eaten or to correct high BG as prearranged with your health care team.
- You may need to temporarily increase or decrease your basal rate by using the Temp Basal feature as prearranged with your health care team.

### Medication

Always let your health care team know ALL medications you are taking. Even medications you are taking for other reasons may impact your diabetes management, so it is important that you always let your health care team know all the medications you are taking.

### Blood and Urine Testing

- Check your BG before your usual mealtime and every 2-4 hours if indicated.
- **Test your blood or urine for ketones at least 4 times a day, or according to instructions from your health care team.**

### Fluids and Diet

**Always follow your health care team's sick day guidelines.** Fluid intake is essential with any illness. Consume 8 ounces of fluid per hour. Every third hour consume 8 ounces of a sodium-rich liquid, such as bouillon. You need to consume 150-200 grams of carbohydrates daily. If ketones are moderate, contact your health care team. Develop a sick plan with your health care team prior to illness.

\* Mensing C., The Art and Science of Diabetes Self-Management Education. 2006. Chicago: American Association of Diabetes Educators.

## CHAPTER 15 - SICK DAY GUIDELINES

## CHAPTER 16 - LIFESTYLE ISSUES

### Exercise and Sports

There are many options for wearing your pump during exercise and sports activities. During “low-contact” sport activities, such as walking, biking or aerobics, your pump can be clipped to the waistband, or for added security, placed in a “sport case.” During “contact” sports such as baseball, basketball or hockey, your pump can be disconnected for up to one hour. Always follow your health care team’s individual guidelines when disconnecting your pump because you may need to compensate for missed basal insulin. Before and after you disconnect for any length of time, remember to check your BG levels.

### Swimming

Your pump is tested for immersion in water to a depth of 12 feet for 24 hours under normal swimming conditions. You should not wear your pump while scuba diving or when using high diving boards.

Your pump should not be taken into hot tubs, as the extreme temperature can adversely affect insulin quality.

If your pump has been dropped, examine it carefully for cracks or signs of damage. If the back label of your pump is not securely affixed or if you suspect your pump may have been damaged or otherwise had its waterproof integrity compromised, **Do Not** use in water. Call our Customer Service representatives at 1-999-999-9999.

### Traveling

With a pump, traveling becomes less complicated and more enjoyable. However, traveling still requires preparation. Remember to order your pump supplies in advance and pack the following items:

- A letter from your health care team that explains the necessity of carrying insulin supplies and wearing a pump.
- A prescription for insulin, both rapid-acting for your pump and the type recommended by your health care team in case you need to take insulin by injection (Remember, your pump is designed and calibrated to use U100 concentration insulin only. Use of any insulin with lesser or greater concentration can result in serious injury or death.)
- Emergency supplies listed in *Chapter 1 in Section I*, pages 3–8.
- Accessible snacks.
- Bottled water to prevent dehydration while flying. (Remember to check your BG frequently to distinguish between high blood glucose dehydration and normal flight dehydration.)
- The name of a referral health care team at your final destination in case of an emergency.
- Pack your insulin carefully so that it is not exposed to extreme temperatures or temperature changes.

---

**CHAPTER 16 - LIFESTYLE ISSUES**

---

- Pack your pump supplies in carry-on luggage when traveling by air or train. **Do Not** pack your supplies in checked luggage. Contact the Federal Aviation Administration (or your country equivalent) or your local airport security office before traveling by air to obtain prescription/medical supply carry-on regulations.
- Adjust your pump's clock when crossing time zones.
- Pumps will rarely set off airport metal detectors, so there is no need to remove your pump when passing through airport security. However, as airport security technology becomes more sophisticated, it is possible that a pump will set off the detector.

For more information on traveling with pumps, visit the American Diabetes Association (ADA) website ([www.diabetes.org](http://www.diabetes.org)) or call your local airport for security guidelines that may apply.

## Intimacy

Your pump need not interfere with intimacy. You can disconnect most infusion sets. Always follow your health care team's guidelines when disconnecting from your pump. You may need to compensate for missed basal insulin. Also, before and after you disconnect for any length of time, remember to check your BG levels.

## CHAPTER 17 - MY INFORMATION

This chapter provides tables to record information needed for programming your personal settings into your pump. Consult your health care team for correct information for your personal treatment plan.

### Insulin to Carb Ratios (I:C)

Daily Time Slot	My I:C ratio
12am	

### Insulin Sensitivity Factor (ISF)

Time of Day	My ISF
12am	

### BG Targets

Time of Day	My BG Target	My BG Target range (+/-)
12am		

## CHAPTER 17 - MY INFORMATION

## Temp Basal Rate Decrease for Activity

Activity Type	% Decrease	Set Temp in advance of activity (yes or no)	Minutes to set in advance
Light (gardening, walking, shopping)			
Moderate (leisurely biking, golf {no cart})			
Strenuous (basketball, jogging, swimming)			
Sustained (ice skating, rowing, hiking)			

My duration for Insulin on Board (IOB) is: \_\_\_\_\_

Basal Programming    Date \_\_\_\_\_

Segment Start Time	Program 1 Weekday _____ Units/Hr	Program 2 Other _____ Units/Hr	Program 3 Weekend _____ Units/Hr	Program 4 Exercise _____ Units/Hr

## CHAPTER 17 - MY INFORMATION

Basal Programming Date \_\_\_\_\_

Segment Start Time	Program 1 Weekday	Program 2 Other	Program 3 Weekend	Program 4 Exercise
	Units/Hr	Units/Hr	Units/Hr	Units/Hr

Basal Programming Date \_\_\_\_\_

Segment Start Time	Program 1 Weekday	Program 2 Other	Program 3 Weekend	Program 4 Exercise
	Units/Hr	Units/Hr	Units/Hr	Units/Hr



CHAPTER 17 - MY INFORMATION

Basal Programming    Date \_\_\_\_\_

Segment Start Time	Program 1 Weekday	Program 2 Other	Program 3 Weekend	Program 4 Exercise
	_____ Units/Hr	_____ Units/Hr	_____ Units/Hr	_____ Units/Hr

## CHAPTER 18 - WARRANTY AND TECHNICAL INFORMATION

### LIMITED WARRANTY

Animas® warrants that the Animas® Insulin Pump will be free from defects in material and workmanship, under normal use and conditions, for a period of four years from the date of purchase by the original purchaser. This limited warranty extends only to the original purchaser.

If, during the warranty period, your pump should fail because of a defect in material or workmanship, it may be returned to Animas® and Animas® will repair or replace your pump with a new or recertified pump, at Animas®' option, without charge to the purchaser. Freight and transportation charges, where applicable, incurred in shipping your pump to be repaired or replaced under this limited warranty will be paid by Animas®. In the event your pump is replaced or repaired under this warranty, the warranty period shall not be extended.

This limited warranty is valid only if your pump is used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. This limited warranty does not extend to any damage as a result of the following:

- changes or modifications to your pump by the user or any other third person after the date of manufacture;
- service or repairs performed by any person or entity other than an Animas®-authorized service person;
- a force majeure or other event beyond the control of Animas®; or
- negligence, misuse or abuse of your pump by the user or any other third person, including, but not limited to, improper storage of or physical abuse such as dropping or otherwise damaging your pump.

This limited warranty does not cover batteries, infusion sets, cartridges or other pump accessories.

Except as expressly set forth in this limited warranty, all other warranties are expressly disclaimed and excluded, including without limitation, any warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

The remedies provided for in this warranty are the exclusive remedies available in the event of any breach hereof. Except for such remedies, Animas®, its suppliers, and its distributors shall not be liable for any losses, liabilities, claims, or damages of any kind or nature whatsoever, including, without limitation, any indirect, consequential, incidental or special damages, caused by or arising from a defect of your pump.

## CHAPTER 18 - WARRANTY AND OTHER TECHNICAL INFORMATION

## Technical Specifications

**NOTE:** When applicable, testing used 23" Comfort™ infusion set and temperature of 73°F ± 2°F (23°C ± 1°C)

<b>Number of Basal Segments:</b>	12 per Program
<b>Number of Basal Programs:</b>	4
<b>Basal Delivery Frequency (minimum):</b>	every 3 minutes
<b>Temp Basal Range:</b>	-90% to +200%, in 10% increments, OFF
<b>Temp Basal Duration:</b>	0.5 hrs to 24 hrs
<b>Extended Bolus Duration:</b>	0.5 hrs to 12 hrs; 0.1 hr
<b>Battery Type:</b>	1.5 Volt Energizer AA L91 Lithium or 1.5 Volt AA Alkaline
<b>Number of Batteries:</b>	1
<b>Battery Life, Typical use:</b>	approximately 5 to 7 weeks for a lithium battery and approximately 2 to 3 weeks for an alkaline battery
<b>Maximum volume infused under single fault condition:</b>	Max 2.0U
<b>Cartridge Capacity up to:</b>	2.0 mL or 200 units
<b>Storage Conditions:</b>	-4°F (-20°C) to +140°F (+60°C) 10% to 100% relative humidity, including condensing 50 kPa to 106 kPa Batteries must be removed during storage periods exceeding 2 weeks.
<b>Operating Conditions:</b>	+40°F (+5°C) to +104°F (+40°C) Outside these temperatures, the flow accuracy and time to occlusion could be compromised. 20% to 90% relative humidity, including condensing
<b>Ambient pressure:</b>	70 kPa to 106 kPa
<b>Pump Disposal:</b>	Contact Animas® Corporation for pump disposal information.
<b>Audio Bolus Range:</b>	0.1 - 2.0U in 0.1U step 0.5 - 10.0U in 0.5U step 1.0 - 20.0U in 1.0U step 5.0 - 35.0U in 5.0U step

## CHAPTER 18 - WARRANTY AND OTHER TECHNICAL INFORMATION

**Flow Rate Accuracy\***

Delivery Mode	Accuracy
Bolus	+/- 5%
0.100U/Hr Basal and higher	+/- 5%

\*Accuracy rate will be lower at basal rates less than 0.100U/Hr.

**Occlusion Detection time to alarm\*\***

	Typical	Maximum
Bolus 3 units or more	8 sec.	30 sec.
0.025U/Hr basal	72 hrs.	120 hrs.
1.0U/Hr basal	90 minutes	3 hrs.

\*\*Certain factors, such as the presence of air in the infusion set or the cartridge and/or ambient temperature changes, can delay an occlusion alarm.

**Occlusion Pressure Threshold:** 75 kPa typical, 241 kPa max.

**Bolus Volume after Occlusion release:** (1.0U/Hr basal)

- 1.0U max with occlusion sensitivity set to high
- 3.0U max with occlusion sensitivity set to low

**Delivery Rates:**

- Bolus, under 1U: 1.1 to 2.2U/sec
- Bolus, 1U or more (normal delivery speed): 0.5 to 0.9U/sec
- Bolus, 1U or more (slow delivery speed): 0.2 to 0.4U/sec
- Prime: 1.8 to 2.9U/sec

**Insulin Types Used:** Rapid-acting U100 insulin or regular (short-acting) U100 insulin

**Basal Rate Range:** 0.025-25U/Hr in 0.025U/Hr steps

**Bolus Range:** 0.05-35U in 0.05U steps

**Protection from equipment error:** More than 1.5 million redundant safety cross-checks per day for both hardware and software functionality.

Continuous Operation, Internally Powered Device

Type BF Medical Equipment (Patient isolated, not defibrillator protected)

Watertight Equipment, IPX8 (protected against the effects of submersion, tested at 12 feet/3.6 meters for 24 hours).

Infrared communication port

## Patient's Bill of Rights

It is the intent of Animas® Corporation to address and respect patients' rights in providing care and services. It is the policy of Animas® Corporation to provide services to all persons without regard to race, color, national origin, religion, sex, age or disability. No person shall be excluded from participation in or be denied the benefits of any service, or be subject to discrimination because of race, color, national origin, religion, sex, age or disability.

It is the responsibility of all Animas® employees involved in interaction with the patient through sales, education programs, customer service or any other means to understand and promote this policy.

The patient is involved in his or her care as follows:

- The patient is given information to allow decision-making regarding care or services.
- Patient is involved in conflict resolution.
- Patient is involved in resolving ethical issues.
- The patient will have complaints heard, reviewed and resolved to the best of our ability.
- The patient has a right to confidentiality and privacy with regards to their Medical information.
- The patient has a right to have their communication needs met. Animas® will work with the patient to ensure that any language requirements, to include sign language and any additional educational needs, are met.
- The patient has a right to have his or her property respected.
- The Animas® Patient Administration Representative will discuss billing of co-pays and deductibles as well as determination of whether the patient has on going ability to pay for supplies. Animas® will also address patients who lose insurance coverage.

If the patient believes that they have been denied a benefit of service because of race, color, national origin, religion, sex, age or disability, they may file a Complaint of Discrimination with the Manager of Animas® Customer Service Department, either verbally or in writing.

If the complaint is filed in writing, it should include a name, address, phone number and a brief description of what occurred which led to the belief that the individual was discriminated against. In this way the appropriate person may respond to the complaint.

The complaint may also be filed with external agencies such as the State Department of Social Services, or the State Department of Health and Human Services.

Please contact Animas® Corporation if there are any questions or concerns regarding this information.

### The Joint Commission

Animas® is committed to the safety and care of its patients. As part of this commitment, Animas® is accredited by The Joint Commission, which sets the standards for quality of care in the health care community. If you would like to contact The Joint Commission regarding an issue, you may do so by fax. (630-792-5636) or mail (Office of Quality Monitoring, The Joint Commission, One Renaissance Boulevard, Oakbrook Terrace, IL 60181). You will need to complete a Quality Incident Report Form, which is available from the Joint Commission.

## Supplier Standards

Animas® complies with all Medicare guidelines relating to your supplies. We are pleased to make you aware of the following supplier standards.

1. Animas® will fill orders from its own inventory or inventory of other companies with which it has contracts to fill such orders; or fabricates or fits items for sale from supplies it buys under a contract.
2. Animas® will oversee delivery of items that the supplier ordered for the end-user (Animas® Customer). Animas® will also be responsible to assure delivery of large items to the end-user.
3. Animas® honors all warranties, expressed or implied, under applicable State law.
4. Animas® will answer questions or complaints an end-user has about an item or use of an item that is sold or rented to the end-user. If the end-user has questions about Medicare, Animas® will refer the end-user to the appropriate carrier.
5. Animas® maintains and repairs directly, or through a service contract with another company, items it rents to an end-user.
6. Animas® accepts returns of substandard (less than full quality for a particular item) or unsuitable items (inappropriate for the end-user at the time it was fitted and/or sold) from the end-user.
7. Animas® discloses consumer information to each Medicare customer. This consists of a copy of these supplier standards to which we are happy to conform.
8. Animas® complies with the disclosure provisions in the Title XI of the Social Security Act, section 1124A(a).

**NOTE:** If you need to know which Regional Carrier to call, Animas® is pleased to provide you with that information at your request.

## CHAPTER 18 - WARRANTY AND OTHER TECHNICAL INFORMATION



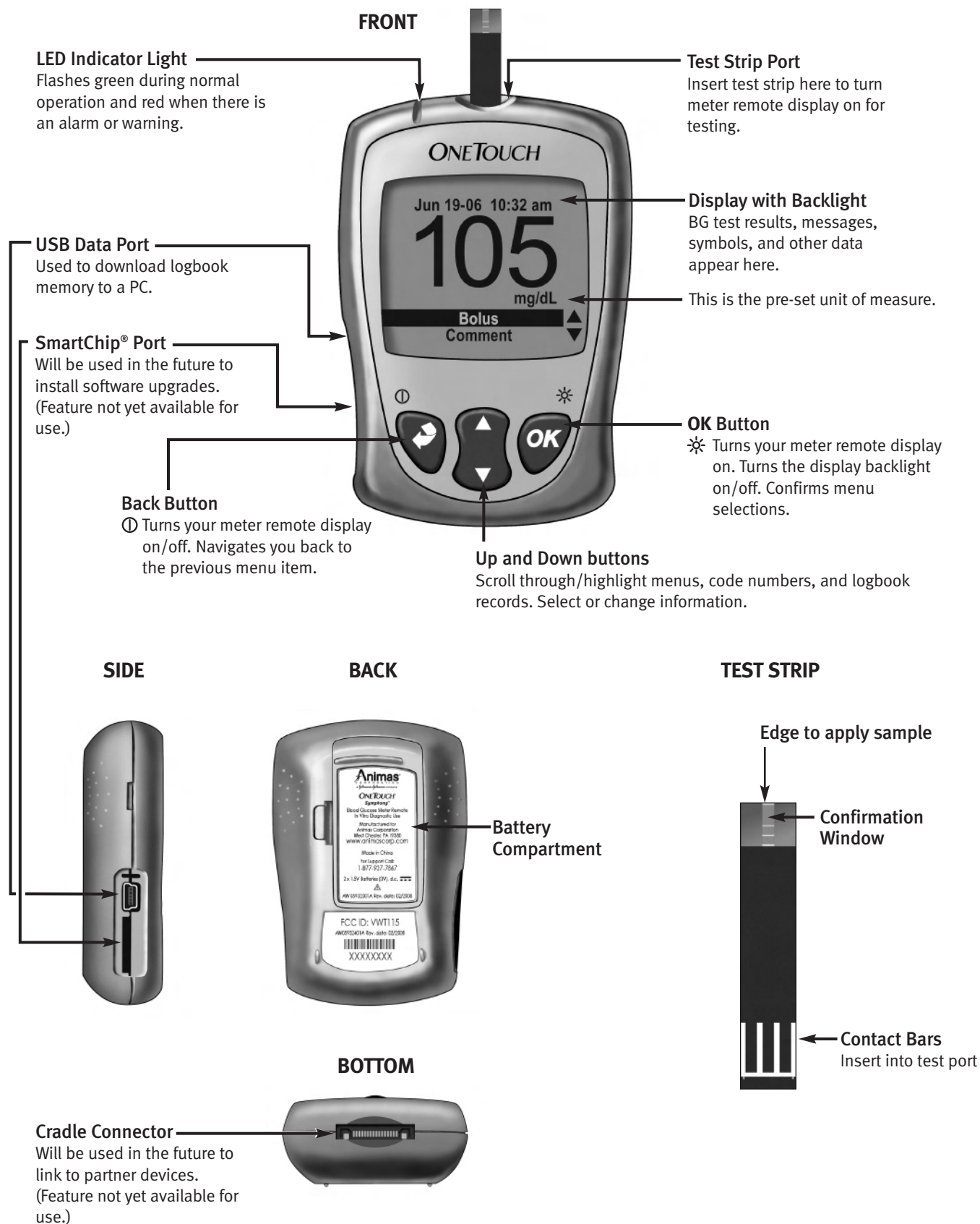
***OneTouch<sup>®</sup> Meter Remote***





## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE
























## Getting to know your OneTouch® Meter Remote and Test Strips



## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

## Display symbols



These symbols guide you while using your meter remote:

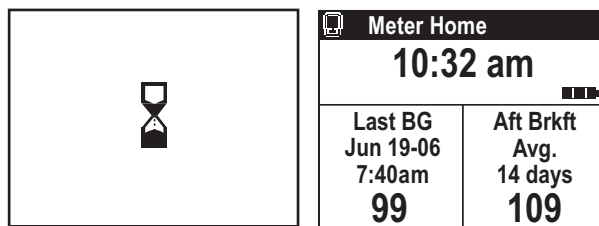
NAVIGATION SYMBOLS		BATTERY POWER SYMBOLS	
SYMBOL	MEANING	SYMBOL	MEANING
	Scroll (move) up only.	Power remaining in your meter or pump batteries	
	Scroll (move) down only.		Full power remaining.
	Scroll up or down.		About two-thirds power remaining.
	No value in the field. (Set of dashes)		About one-third power remaining.
	Shows where you are on the display. A flashing highlight indicates the field can be edited. Press  to accept highlighted area.		No power remaining. You must replace the batteries.
	A meter remote display that involves a meter function.	RF SIGNAL STRENGTH SYMBOLS	
	A meter remote display that involves a pump function.	Communication signal strength between your meter remote and pump.	
	Your meter remote buttons are currently locked.		Full strength.
	There is a short delay in information appearing on your meter remote display, such as when inserting the batteries.		Medium strength.
LOGBOOK ENTRY SYMBOLS			Low strength.
Identifies the type of logbook entry when making a new entry.			The RF connection is lost or interrupted (no connection).
	Exercise entry.		RF communication has been deactivated by the user.
	Health entry.	<b>NOTE:</b> If your meter remote and pump are not paired, no RF signal strength symbol will appear.	
	Food entry.		
	Infusion set change.		

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

## Turning your meter remote display on

You will first need to install the batteries before your meter remote display will turn on. See *Chapter 9* in *Section II*, pages 163–166.

To turn your meter remote display on, press  or . An all-black start-up screen will appear followed by the hourglass symbol. The Meter Home screen will then be displayed.



(Example)


**CAUTION:** If the graphics appear to be different, call Customer Service at 999-999-9999. There may be a problem with your meter remote.

If your meter remote display does not power on, try changing your meter remote batteries. See *Chapter 9* in *Section II*, pages 163–166.

You can also turn your meter remote on by inserting a test strip (see *Chapter 4* in *Section II*, pages 125–138).

From the Meter Home screen you will have access to the Main Menu and all meter remote operations (see next page).


## Using your meter remote display backlight

When your meter remote display is already on, press and hold  for two seconds to turn the backlight on or off.

**NOTE:** Turning the backlight on uses more battery power.

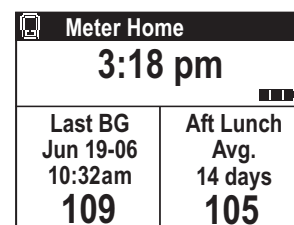
## Turning your meter remote display off

There are several ways to turn your meter remote display off:

- Before or after completing a test, remove the test strip.
- If there is no test strip in your meter remote, press and hold  for two seconds.
- Your meter remote display will turn off by itself if left alone a short time. However, you can extend battery life by turning it off as soon as you are finished.

## Meter Home screen

The Meter Home screen displays the current time of day stored in your meter remote and battery power remaining. Your most recent BG test result appears along with the date and time of the test. Your average BG test results for the current meal period appears next to your most recent BG test result. Averages are based on the number of days you select when you set up your meter remote. See *Advanced features*, pages 114–116 in this chapter.



To go to the Main Menu screen, press .

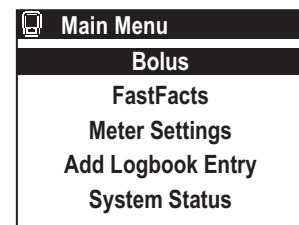
## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

### Main Menu screen

The Main Menu screen provides access to all meter remote operations.

Main Menu screen options are as follows:

- Bolus - Once you activate RF communication on your meter remote and pump, and pair the devices, you will be able to use your meter remote to deliver a bolus from your pump. (See *Chapter 4* in *Section III*, pages 187–202.)
- FastFacts - View on-screen summaries and graphs of BG test results and other health data stored in your meter remote memory.
- Meter Remote Settings - Customize your meter remote for your personal use.
- Add Logbook Entry - Add important health-related data to your meter remote memory.
- System Status - Review and/or troubleshoot pump, meter remote, and RF operations. You will not be able to review or troubleshoot pump operations from your meter remote until you activate RF communication on your meter remote and pump, and pair the devices. (See *Chapter 4* in *Section III*, pages 187–202.)



To select any item on the Main Menu screen, press to scroll to/highlight it on the screen and press .

**NOTE:** Many of your meter remote screens include an option to return to the Main Menu screen before and after completing a step or procedure. Simply press to highlight “Main Menu” and press .

### Setting up your meter remote

Your meter remote has settings that let you customize your meter remote for your personal use. Your meter remote comes pre-set at the factory with the display language and other features already selected. Before using your meter remote for the first time you should check and update these settings if necessary.

You can change or customize the other meter remote features as follows:

#### Basic

- Change the display language, time, or date.

**NOTE:** Once you activate RF communication on your meter remote and pump, and pair the devices, your meter remote automatically sets its time and date to match the pump time and date.

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

### Customize

- Personalize features such as time and date formats, averages, meal schedule, “Before Meal” and “After Meal” glucose ranges, hypoglycemia level, and bolus calculator.

### Lock Buttons

- Disable your meter remote buttons/functions to protect against unintentional use.

### RF

- Activate and deactivate the RF feature, change the RF channel, activate pairing, and test RF communication between your meter and pump (once you begin using them together as a system).

### Alerts

- Set your meter remote to alert you when specific actions have been taken or need to be taken or when there are problems using your meter remote. Alerts may be set using sound and/or LED light.

Your meter remote will provide an additional set of alerts once you activate RF communication on your meter remote and pump, and pair the devices. These include alerts when there are communication problems between the devices, when your intended actions require attention, and when there are problems with pump operation. Many pump alerts, warnings, and alarms will display and/or sound both on your pump and on your meter remote. You can use your meter remote to confirm and clear the alerts, warnings, and alarms from both devices. Pump sounds are set directly on your pump during your pump set-up procedure.

**NOTE:** You do not need to change any of your meter remote settings in order to begin BG testing. Simply insert a test strip to turn your meter remote display on and proceed with the test. See *Chapter 4* in *Section II*, pages 125–138.

Following is a summary of meter remote settings that you can change or personalize for your own use. Factory settings refer to how your meter remote is set up when you receive it from the manufacturer. Custom settings refer to the alternate ways you can change or personalize the factory settings.

### Meter Remote Settings

OPTION	FACTORY SETTINGS	CUSTOM SETTINGS
<b>Basic Set-up</b> Language Time Date	English 12:00 am Jan 1-07	Spanish Change as necessary Change as necessary
<b>Customize Settings:</b> Time Format Date Format Begin of week Contrast Beeper volume	am/pm MM/DD/YY Sunday 0 20	24-hour DD/MM/YY Monday -10 to 10 1 to 20

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

OPTION	FACTORY SETTINGS	CUSTOM SETTINGS
<b>Advanced Features:</b>  Averages Schedule  Glucose Range Before Meal After Meal Hypo Level	14 Day Pre-set (see <i>Advanced Features</i> , pages 114–116 in this chapter)  90–130 mg/dL — 70 mg/dL	7, 30, 60, 90 Day Personal  Personal Personal Personal
<b>Calculator Set-up:</b>  This menu option is only available if your meter remote is not paired with your pump. When the devices are paired, these values are retrieved directly from your pump.  I:C Ratio BG Target +/- (range) Insulin Sensitivity (IS) Factor	1U:15g 120 mg/dL 10 mg/dL 1U:50 mg/dL	Personal Personal Personal Personal
<b>Lock Buttons</b>	Unlocked	Locked
<b>RF Activation</b>	OFF	ON
<b>Pairing</b>	OFF	ON
<b>Alerts</b>  Warning Cue LED	On (Audio Beep) Off	Off On

## Basic Set-up

### NOTE:

- After installing the batteries for the first time, your meter remote will automatically enter Basic Set-up (at step 3) when you turn your meter remote display on. There will be a short delay of up to 30 seconds as your meter remote performs a power-on self test. An hourglass symbol (⌚) will appear on the display during that time.
- See *Chapter 9* in *Section II*, pages 163–166 for important information on the correct way to install the batteries.

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

**1 Go to Meter Settings mode**

On the Main Menu screen press to highlight “Meter Settings”. Press to confirm your selection and go to the Meter Settings screen.

Main Menu
Bolus
FastFacts
<b>Meter Settings</b>
Add Logbook Entry
System Status

**2 Go to Basic Set-up**

Meter Settings
<b>Basic</b>
Customize
Lock Buttons
RF
Alerts

“Basic” will be highlighted. Press to confirm your selection and go to the Basic Set-up screen.

**3 Choose a display language**

“Language” will be highlighted. Press to confirm your selection and go to the Language Set-up screen.

Basic Set-up
<b>Language</b>
Date/Time

**4 Set the display language**

Language Set-up
Set up in?
<b>English</b>
Español

English is the language that has been pre-set at the factory. Press for English, or highlight “Español” and press for Spanish.

**NOTE:** Once you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system, the language on your meter remote must be set to the same language as your pump to use your meter remote to access pump functions.

**5 Set the time of day**

On the Basic Set-up screen, press to highlight “Date/Time”. Press to confirm your selection.

Basic Set-up
Language
<b>Date/Time</b>

Date/Time Set-up
Time
8:00 am
Date
Jan 1-07

Press to scroll to the correct hour. Press to confirm your selection.

Press to scroll to the correct minutes and press .

Date/Time Set-up
Time
10:00 am
Date
Jan 1-07



## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

“am” or “pm” is now highlighted next to minutes. Press to scroll to the correct am or pm setting. Press to confirm your selection.

Date/Time Set-up	
Time	10:32 <b>am</b>
Date	<b>Jan</b> 1-07

The month is now highlighted.

Date/Time Set-up	
Time	10:32 <b>am</b>
Date	Jan 1-07

## 6 Set the date

Press to scroll to the correct month and press . Repeat these steps to select the day and then the year. To confirm each selection, press .

Date/Time Set-up	
Time	10:32 am
Date	Jun <b>1</b> -07

Date/Time Set-up	
Time	10:32 am
Date	Jun 19- <b>07</b>

After you confirm the final selection for year, you will return to the Meter Settings screen where you can begin the Customize Set-up.

### NOTE:

- If more than two minutes elapse during battery replacement, you may have to re-set the date and time. All other meter remote settings remain saved in the meter remote memory.
- You will need to manually adjust your meter remote clock time to reflect any Daylight Saving Time adjustments in your local area.
- Once you activate RF communication on your meter remote and pump, and pair the devices, your meter remote's clock time will be set to match the pump's clock time.

## Customize


On the Meter Settings screen, press with “Customize” highlighted.

You will be reminded to have your Owner's Booklet available as a reference while customizing your meter remote.

Meter Settings
Basic
<b>Customize</b>
Lock Buttons
RF
Alerts

Please use your Owner's Booklet to help you set up your Meter

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE



When you choose “Customize” on the Meter Settings screen, an additional menu of options appears. You must review all the menu options and make selections for each for your settings to be saved. Press  to begin with “Settings”.

The Calculator Set-up option on your meter remote is available only when your meter remote is not paired with your pump.

### Settings



“Time Format” is now highlighted.

#### 1 Set the time format

Press  to highlight the time format you prefer— am/pm or 24 hour. Press  to confirm your selection.



“Date Format” is now highlighted.

#### 2 Set the date format

Press  to highlight the date format you want your meter remote to display— month first (MM/DD/YY) or day first (DD/MM/YY). Press  to confirm your selection.



“Begin of week” is now highlighted.

#### 3 Set the day your week starts on

For record-keeping purposes you can begin your week on Sunday or Monday. Press  to highlight your choice and press  to confirm your selection.

“Contrast” is now highlighted.

#### 4 Select the display contrast

You can adjust the contrast level of your meter remote display from -10 (low contrast) to 10 (high contrast) to help with viewing. To change the contrast level, press  to select the desired level. As you scroll, the display contrast changes automatically to help you make your choice. Press  to confirm your selection.

“Beeper volume” is now highlighted.

#### 5 Set the beeper volume

Your meter remote was set at the factory to give audio signals (beeps) at key points in the test procedure. Beeps are also used to sound warnings and alarms that arise from meter remote or pump operation. Beep volume may be set anywhere from 1 (barely audible) to 20 (loudest).

Customize	
Settings	
Advanced Features	
Calculator Set-up	

Settings	
Time Format	am/pm
Date Format	24 hour
Begin of week	Sunday
Contrast	0
Beeper volume	20

Settings	
Time Format	am/pm
Date Format	MM/DD/YY
Begin of week	DD/MM/YY
Contrast	0
Beeper volume	20

Settings	
Time Format	am/pm
Date Format	MM/DD/YY
Begin of week	Sunday
Contrast	Monday
Beeper volume	20

Settings	
Time Format	am/pm
Date Format	MM/DD/YY
Begin of week	Sunday
Contrast	0
Beeper volume	20

Settings	
Time Format	am/pm
Date Format	MM/DD/YY
Begin of week	Sunday
Contrast	10
Beeper volume	20

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

To change the volume, press to select the desired level. Press to confirm your selection.

You will return to the Customize screen.

### NOTE:

- You cannot turn the beep completely off.
- Your settings are not saved until you have made a selection for each and pressed after the last setting (Beeper volume).

## Advanced features

You can choose the number of days to be included in your BG test averages, and set your personal meal schedule, before-meal and after-meal glucose ranges, and target hypoglycemic level.

On the Customize screen, press with “Advanced Features” highlighted.

Customize
Settings
<b>Advanced Features</b>
Calculator Set-up

### 1 Set the days included for test averages

“Averages” is now highlighted. Your meter remote is pre-set to display a 14-day average of your BG test results on the Meter Home screen, and when you compare your current BG test result to your previous BG test result. You can change the number of days that make up this average to include the last 7, 30, 60, or 90 days. Press to choose the number of days you want to include and press .

Advanced Features	
Averages	7 Day
Schedule	14
Glucose Range	30
Before Meal	60
After Meal	90
Hypo Level	70

“Schedule” is now highlighted.


**NOTE:** You can still look at averages for all five time periods by reviewing your meter remote logbook.

### 2 Set your meal schedule

Next, your meter remote will prompt you to select time periods for your usual meal schedule. When you set this feature all of your BG test results will automatically be tagged with the mealtime.

To view the pre-set meal schedule highlight “Pre-set” and press .

Advanced Features	
Averages	14 Day
<b>Schedule</b>	<b>Pre-set</b>
Glucose Range	Personal
Before Meal	90-130
After Meal	--- - ---
Hypo Level	70

 Pre-set Schedule		
Bef Brkft	6:00 a-	9:00 a
Aft Brkft	9:00 a-	11:00 a
Bef Lunch	11:00 a-	2:00 p
Aft Lunch	2:00 p-	5:00 p
Bef Dinner	5:00 p-	8:00 p
Aft Dinner	8:00 p-	11:00 p
Night	11:00 p-	6:00 a





The pre-set schedule will appear on the screen. Both “Before Meal” and “After Meal” times are pre-set (“a” refers to am and “p” refers to pm). Whenever you test, these mealtimes will be recorded in your meter remote memory whether or not you have actually eaten according to this schedule. To use the pre-set schedule, press .

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

To personalize your schedule, press , choose “Personal”, and press .

Personal Schedule		
Bef Brkft	6:00 a-	9:00 a
Aft Brkft	9:00 a-	11:00 a
Bef Lunch	11:00 a-	2:00 p
Aft Lunch	2:00 p-	5:00 p
Bef Dinner	5:00 p-	8:00 p
Aft Dinner	8:00 p-	11:00 p
Night	11:00 p-	6:00 a

To change all or some of the personal meal schedule:

- Press  to scroll through each mealtime.
- Press  to select the correct hours and minutes (in 15-minute steps).
- Press  to confirm your selection and move to/highlight the next mealtime.
- If you make a mistake, press  to return to any mealtime and make corrections.

You only need to set the start times for each mealtime. End times will automatically change to match the start time of the next time period. For example, if you set the start time of “Bef Lunch” for 10:00 am, the end time of the previous “Aft Brkft” will automatically change to 10:00 am.

End time of “Aft Brkft” is the same as the start time of “Bef Lunch”.

Personal Schedule		
Bef Brkft	7:00 a-	9:00 a
Aft Brkft	9:00 a-	10:00 a
Bef Lunch	10:00 a-	1:00 p
Aft Lunch	1:00 p-	5:00 p
Bef Dinner	5:00 p-	8:00 p
Aft Dinner	8:00 p-	11:00 p
Night	11:00 p-	7:00 a


Personal Schedule		
Bef Brkft	7:00 a-	9:00 a
Aft Brkft	9:00 a-	10:00 a
Bef Lunch	10:00 a-	1:00 p
Aft Lunch	1:00 p-	5:00 p
Bef Dinner	5:00 p-	8:00 p
Aft Dinner	8:00 p-	11:00 p
Night	11:00 p-	7:00 a



When you are finished, press  to save your personal schedule.

**NOTE:** You have the option to modify the mealtime for any test if necessary. See *Advanced Features*, pages 114–116 in this chapter.

**NOTE:** It is important that your meter remote date and time are correct. That way your BG test results and other health information will be stored correctly in your meter remote memory. The lower end of the “Before Meal” Glucose Range is now highlighted.

### 3 Set your before-meal and after-meal glucose ranges

The “Before Meal” glucose range is pre-set to 90–130 mg/dL. To use this range, press  twice. You can change this range to one recommended by your health care professional.

Press  to change the lower end of the range in 1 mg/dL steps, and press . Repeat these steps to enter a value for the upper end.

Advanced Features	
Averages	14 Day
Schedule	Personal
Glucose Range	
Before Meal	90-130
After Meal	--- - ---
Hypo Level	70

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

There is no pre-set “After Meal” glucose range. If you have an “After Meal” glucose range recommended by your health care professional, press and then to select to your target numbers.

The factory-set hypoglycemic level (“Hypo Level”) is now highlighted.

#### 4 Set your target hypoglycemic level

The factory-set hypoglycemia level is 70 mg/dL. If your health care professional has advised you to use a different level, press to select the correct number and press .

**NOTE:** Your Advanced Features settings are not saved until you have made a selection for each and pressed after the last setting (Hypo Level).

Advanced Features	
Averages	14 Day
Schedule	Personal
Glucose Range	
Before Meal	90-130
After Meal	--- - ---
Hypo Level	70

Advanced Features	
Averages	14 Day
Schedule	Personal
Glucose Range	
Before Meal	90-130
After Meal	--- - ---
Hypo Level	70

## Calculator Set-up

The last item on the Customize screen is “Calculator Set-up”. This feature is mainly intended for use once you have completed pump training and fully understand the ezCarb and ezBG functions on your pump. See *Chapter 10 in Section I*, pages 49–58.

**NOTE:** Please discuss the Calculator Set-up with your health care professional before using this feature.

The ezCarb and BG Bolus screens on your meter remote allow you to automatically calculate a bolus to cover carbs eaten and/or correct a high BG. Before you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system (see *Section III*), the Calculator Set-up on your meter remote lets you enter a series of bolus calculator settings that are used on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens. **The Calculator Set-up feature on your meter remote will only be available when the devices are not paired (see *Chapter 4 in Section III*, pages 187–202).**

Customize
Settings
Advanced Features
Calculator Set-up

**⚠ WARNING:** Be sure to enter and store the correct values for each of the items in the Calculator Set-up screen. Incorrect values can lead to calculated insulin units that may be too high or too low for your current profile and situation.

#### 1 Set your I:C Ratio

Your I:C ratio is used to help calculate a bolus to cover the number of carbs in a meal or snack. It is defined as the approximate number of carbs (grams) that you can cover with 1 unit of insulin. You can change your I:C ratio by pressing to select the desired number.

Press to confirm your I:C ratio value.



The “BG Target” field is now highlighted.

Calculator Set-up	
I:C Ratio	1U:15 g
BG Target	120 mg/dL
	+ / - 10 mg/dL
IS Factor	1U:50 mg/dL

**NOTE:** When using the Calculator Set-up on your meter remote, the I:C ratio you set applies to all times of the day. However, you may make changes to the I:C ratio as needed through the Calculator Set-up or during bolus calculations on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens.

## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

**2 Set your default BG Target**

Your BG target represents your goal for achieving good glycemic (BG) control. To choose a different target, press  to select the desired BG Target and press .

The “+/-” field is now highlighted.

Calculator Set-up	
I:C Ratio	1U:15 g
BG Target	120 mg/dL
	+ / - 10 mg/dL
IS Factor	1U:50 mg/dL


**3 Set your default +/- (range) value**


By setting a range (+/-), your meter remote will not calculate a BG correction if your actual BG is within that range. If you prefer to correct to a single target rather than a target range, set your range to “+/- 0”.

The “IS Factor” field is now highlighted.

Calculator Set-up	
I:C Ratio	1U:15 g
BG Target	120 mg/dL
	+ / - 10 mg/dL
IS Factor	1U:50 mg/dL

**4 Set your default Insulin Sensitivity (IS) Factor**

“IS Factor” is the approximate amount by which you can lower your BG level (in mg/dL) with one unit of insulin. You can change your IS Factor by scrolling to the desired number and pressing .

After setting your IS Factor and pressing , you will return to the Meter Settings screen with “Lock Buttons” highlighted.

Calculator Set-up	
I:C Ratio	1U:15 g
BG Target	120 mg/dL
	+ / - 10 mg/dL
IS Factor	1U:50 mg/dL

**⚠ WARNING: Bolus units that are computed with the calculator may not take all your other health factors into consideration. These include:**

- Your stress level.
- Whether you plan to exercise.
- Any IOB from a syringe, pen, or pump bolus.

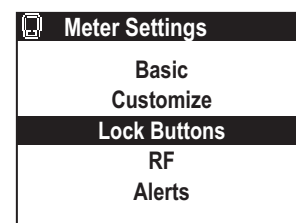
You may always adjust the insulin units up or down before you decide to administer your bolus. If you dose an insulin amount that is too high or too low, this may result in a hypoglycemic or hyperglycemic event. Please discuss the bolus calculator feature and all relevant personal settings with your health care professional before using the calculator for the first time.

## Lock Buttons


The Lock Buttons feature lets you protect your meter remote from unintentional use. For example, locking your meter remote buttons can help prevent unintended insulin delivery once you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system. While buttons are locked, you will have limited ability to navigate through meter remote operations.

### 1 Go to Lock Buttons

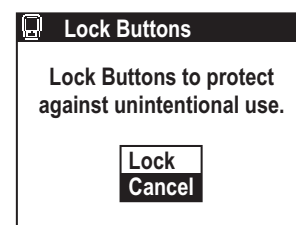
On the Meter Settings screen press  with “Lock Buttons” highlighted.






### 2 Lock your meter remote buttons

“Cancel” will be highlighted. To lock the buttons, highlight “Lock” and press .



You will go to the Meter Home screen.



#### NOTE:

- You can also lock your meter remote buttons simply by pressing and holding  and  at the same time for about three seconds after your meter remote display has been turned on.
- Once your meter remote buttons are locked, you will only have access to the Meter Home screen. The lock symbol  will appear on top of the screen. Buttons will remain locked even if you turn your meter remote display on or off.
- While the buttons are locked, you will still be able to perform a BG test. Pending alarms and warnings will still be displayed.
- The Lock Buttons feature only affects the buttons on your meter remote. It does not affect the buttons on your pump.
- You may also lock the buttons on your pump using the Tamper Resistant feature on your pump. See *Chapter 4 in Section I*, pages 15–26.

## Unlocking your meter remote buttons

To unlock the meter remote buttons, press and hold  and  at the same time for about three seconds after your meter remote display has been turned on.

## RF and Pairing

The RF and Pairing features on your meter remote and pump are used to establish communication between the two devices. This way you can use your meter remote display for remote access to many pump functions. The RF feature also makes it easy for BG test results from your meter remote to be incorporated into bolus calculations on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens.



CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

When you are ready to begin using your meter remote to access pump functions, see *Chapter 1* in *Section III*, pages 173–174.

Alerts

Your OneTouch® Meter Remote will alert you to specific alarms and warnings that result from meter remote operation. In addition to text messages (Notification screens) that appear on your meter remote display, you can choose how you would like to be alerted with audio beeps or LED signals. See *Chapter 10* in *Section II*, pages 167–170 for a description of meter remote-specific alerts that will sound and display on your meter remote. That chapter provides tips for taking the appropriate action to clear the problem and continue use.

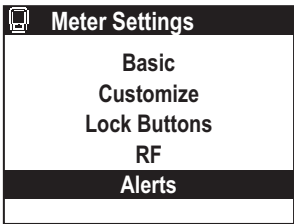
Your meter remote will provide an additional set of alerts once you have activated RF communication on your meter remote and pump, and pair the devices. These include alerts when there are communication problems between the devices or if your intended actions might require additional attention. Many alerts, warnings, and alarms related to insulin delivery from your pump will also display and/or sound both on your meter remote and your pump. See *Chapter 6* in *Section III*, pages 207–216 for a description of these types of messages/alerts. That chapter also provides tips for taking the appropriate action to clear the problem and continue use.

Your pump has a progressive warnings and alarms safety system. This means that if you do not confirm the warning or alarm, your pump will begin to beep louder and start to vibrate within one hour. At that time, if you do not confirm the warning or alarm, it will continue until the necessary action is taken. You may confirm the alarm or warning on either your meter remote or your pump. Certain pump conditions, such as the “Replace Battery” warning, require taking action directly on your pump to clear the problem. See *Chapter 6* in *Section III*, pages 207–216 for information on clearing alerts, warnings, and alarms from your pump and meter remote.

1 Go to Alerts

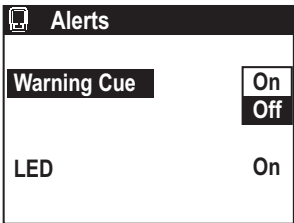
On the Meter Settings screen press **OK** with “Alerts” highlighted.

“Warning Cue” is now highlighted.



2 Set the Warning Cue (Audio beeps) mode

You may choose to be alerted to warnings on your meter remote by audio beeps. When you activate the Warning Cue, this also specifies that warnings on your pump will also sound on your meter remote after you activate RF communication and pair the devices. Once you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system (see *Chapter 1* in *Section III*, pages 173–174), you may wish to review or change this setting.



To activate the Warning Cue, press **OK** with “On” highlighted.



## CHAPTER 1 - SETTING UP YOUR ONETOUCH® METER REMOTE

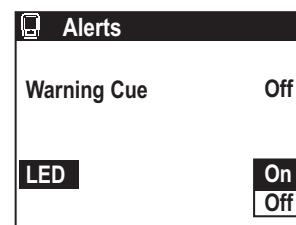
**3 Set the LED mode**

Your meter remote has an LED indicator light located on the top of your meter remote. You may use the LED to visually signal you if there is an alarm, warning, or notification on your meter remote. LED alerts are

in addition to text and audio alerts. During normal operation, the LED flashes green. A flashing red LED indicates an alarm, warning, or notification. When you activate the LED mode, this also specifies that alarms, warnings, or alerts on your pump will also flash on your meter remote after you activate RF communication and pair the devices. Once you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system (see *Chapter 1* in *Section III*, pages 173–174), you may wish to review or change this setting.

To activate the LED alerts, press **OK** with “ON” highlighted.

You will return to the Meter Settings screen.

**NOTE:**

- Whenever your meter remote alerts you to an alarm or warning, you must confirm the message on either your meter remote or pump. If the alarm or warning requires corrective action before normal operation can continue, you must take the appropriate steps to resolve the problem.
- Setting the LED to “On” will use more battery power.

## CHAPTER 2 - SETTING UP AND USING THE FOOD DATABASE

### Food Database

Your meter remote comes from the factory with a basic Food Database pre-loaded. **A reference sheet for your pre-loaded Food Database is included in your system kit contents. You should keep this reference sheet with you to ensure you understand the abbreviated food names and serving sizes.**

**NOTE:** Failure to use the Food Database Reference Guide to confirm your food selection could result in too much or too little insulin being calculated for your carb bolus.

The Food Database contains pre-calculated carbohydrate, fat, protein, and fiber amounts for 500 food choices. You may use ezManager® Software on your PC to update the Food Database in your meter remote memory choosing from a comprehensive library of over 5,000 food choices.

The Food Database provides you with an easy and accurate way to obtain carb totals when using the bolus calculator in the ezCarb Bolus screen. You can also use the Food Database for making logbook entries. A special “Favorites” selection in the Food Database lets you create a separate library of food items and carb amounts for your most preferred or frequently consumed food items.


**NOTE:** When selecting and totaling carb amounts from the Food Database for use in the bolus calculator in the ezCarb Bolus screen, a maximum of 999 grams(g) will be used in the calculations – even if you selected a “Total” amount greater than 999g.

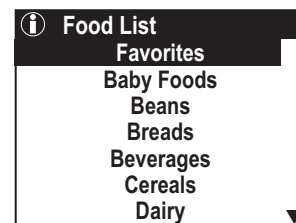
### Updating the food database from your PC

Follow instructions in the ezManager® User Guide for updating the Food Database on your meter remote.



### Making selections from the food database

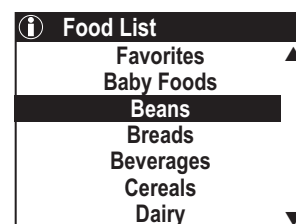
You can access the Food Database from either the ezCarb Bolus screen (see *Chapter 4* in *Section III*, pages 187–202) or by making a Food Logbook entry (see *Chapter 6* in *Section II*, pages 143–148).

From either starting point, the Food List screen will appear where you can access 16 food categories. The first six food categories appear on the Food List screen. Press  to scroll to the other food categories.





#### 1 Choose a food category

Press  to highlight the desired category and press . A second menu of brand choices for that category appears.



## CHAPTER 2 - SETTING UP AND USING THE FOOD DATABASE



**2 Choose a food brand/type**

An additional menu of brand choices appears along with the carb totals for a typical serving size. Press  to highlight the desired brand/type, and then press  to display nutritional information for that food brand/type.

If you do not see the desired food item in the list, you may add it for future reference by following instructions in the ezManager® User Guide.

Beans	
	Carbs(g)
Bushs Baked Beans	29
Chickpeas Canned	54
Kidney Beans Can	37
Navy Beans Canned	53
OEP Refd Bean FF	36
▲▼	


**3 Adjust your serving size**

Nutritional information is displayed for the standard serving size of that food item. The “Serving” field is highlighted. Press  to adjust the serving size as needed and press . As you adjust the serving size, the nutritional units will automatically be re-calculated.

Bushs Baked Beans	
Serving:	1.0
SvgSize = 1/2 C	
Carbs	29.0
Fat	7
Protein	1
Fiber	7
Add More Items	Total

**4 Add or edit additional food items as needed**


“Add More Items” will be highlighted. Up to nine food items may be selected for use with the bolus calculator or when making a logbook entry.

Press  to return to the Food List screen, and repeat steps 1–4 to add additional food items and carbs to your total.

Bushs Baked Beans	
Serving:	1.0
SvgSize = 1/2 C	
Carbs	29.0
Fat	7
Protein	1
Fiber	7
Add More Items	Total


When you are finished, press  to highlight “Total” and press .




Bushs Baked Beans	
Serving:	1.0
SvgSize = 1/2 C	
Carbs	29.0
Fat	7
Protein	1
Fiber	7
Add More Items	Total


The ezCarb Total or Food Entry Total screen will appear and will list all your food items and their specific carb amounts. “Done” will be highlighted. “Max Carbs = 999 g” will appear to let you know that 999 is the maximum carb value used in the bolus calculation, regardless of the “Total” that appears. If you have selected more than three food items, press  to display the rest of your entries.

ezCarb Total	
Item	Carbs(g)
Bushs Baked Beans	29
Chickpeas Canned	54
Kidney Beans Can	38
Total	121 g
Max Carbs = 999 g	
Add More Items	Done

If the food items and carb amounts are correct, press .

If you need to add additional food items, highlight “Add More Items” and press . Then follow the same steps above for adding new items.

If you need to make a change to a particular food item, press  to highlight the food item you wish to edit and press . Nutritional information will appear on the display and you may adjust the serving size as needed. To delete a food item, change the serving size to 0. When you are finished, press  with “Total” highlighted.

When all entries are completed, highlight “Done” and press .

## CHAPTER 3 - ESTIMATING BOLUS INSULIN AMOUNTS WITH THE BOLUS CALCULATOR

Your meter remote includes an ezCarb and ezBG Bolus calculator feature. This feature lets you calculate a bolus to cover carbs eaten and/or correct a high BG. ezCarb and ezBG Bolus calculations on your meter remote work much like the calculations on your pump with a few differences:

- You will not be able to use your meter remote to deliver the bolus from your pump. But you will be able to use the information to manually enter and deliver a bolus amount directly on your pump, or for a pen/syringe bolus.
- Your meter remote does not allow you to include any IOB in the calculations.
- Your meter remote uses settings from the Calculator Set-up (see *Chapter 1* in *Section II*, pages 105–120) as initial inputs for the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus calculator screens.

When you begin using your devices together as a system, the meter remote will replace settings from the Calculator Set-up with settings that are saved in your pump and that apply to the current time of day. Any IOB will also be included in the calculations if the IOB feature is activated on your pump. And you will be able to use your remote to deliver the bolus from your pump. See *Chapter 4* in *Section III*, pages 187–202 for instructions on using the ezCarb and/or ezBG Bolus calculator feature on your meter remote.

To access the ezCarb and ezBG feature on your meter remote, highlight “Bolus” on the Main Menu screen and press **OK**. You have the option of selecting an ezCarb or ezBG Bolus calculation.

Main Menu
Bolus
FastFacts
Meter Settings
Add Logbook Entry
System Status

Bolus Menu
.....
ezCarb
ezBG
Main Menu



## CHAPTER 3 - ESTIMATING BOLUS INSULIN AMOUNTS WITH THE BOLUS CALCULATOR

## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

### BG test principle

When using your meter remote to test your BG, glucose in the blood sample mixes with special chemicals in the test strip and a small electric current is produced. The strength of this current changes with the amount of glucose in the blood sample. Your meter remote measures the current, calculates your BG level, displays the BG test result, and stores it in its memory.

### Starting the test process

Have these things with you when you test your BG level:

- OneTouch® Meter Remote
- OneTouch® Ultra® Test Strips
- Lancing device
- Sterile lancets with protective disks
- OneTouch® Ultra® Control Solution

**⚠ CAUTION:** If you cannot test due to a problem with your testing supplies, contact your health care professional or Customer Service at 999-999-9999. Failure to test could delay treatment decisions and lead to a serious medical condition.

**⚠ CAUTION:** The test strip vial contains drying agents that are harmful if inhaled or swallowed and may cause skin or eye irritation.

#### NOTE:

- Use only OneTouch® Ultra® Test Strips with your meter remote.
- Make sure your meter remote and test strips are about the same temperature before you test.
- OneTouch® Ultra® Test Strips are for single use only. Never re-use a test strip that had either blood or control solution applied to it.
- Testing must be done within the operating range (43°–111° F). For the most accurate BG test results, try to test as close to room temperature (68°–77° F) as you can.

### 1 Check the code on the test strip vial before inserting the test strip

Code numbers are used to calibrate your meter remote with the test strips you are using.



## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

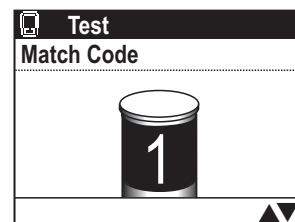
**2 Insert a test strip**

Remove the test strip from its vial and immediately replace the vial cap and close it tightly. With clean, dry hands, you may touch the test strip anywhere on its surface. **Do Not** bend, cut or modify the test strips in any way. Use each test strip immediately after removing it from the vial.

Insert the test strip into the test port as shown. Make sure the three contact bars are facing you. Push the test strip in as far as it will go. **Do Not** bend the test strip.

An all-black start-up screen will be followed by an hourglass symbol and then the Match Code screen.

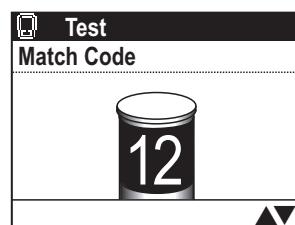
Your meter remote will display the code number from your last test. If a flashing “---” appears instead of a code number, such as when you are first using your meter remote, follow the instructions below to change to a numeric code.



**NOTE:** If you insert a test strip while your meter remote is in the middle of certain insulin delivery procedures (e.g., delivering a Normal Bolus or the Normal portion of a Combo Bolus), you must either allow that procedure to complete, or cancel the operation so you can continue with the test.

**3 Match the code displayed on your meter remote with the code on the test strip vial**

If the code on your meter remote does not match the code number on the test strip vial, press **⏏** to match the code number on the test strip vial. The new code number will flash on the display for three seconds, after which the display will advance to the Test/Apply Blood screen.



If the codes already match, press **OK** to go to the Test/Apply Blood screen. When you do not make a change after three seconds, the display will advance to the Test/Apply Blood screen.

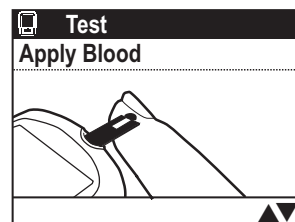
Your meter remote is now ready to perform a BG test.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Matching the code on your meter remote and the code on the test strip vial is essential to obtain accurate BG test results. Each time you test, check to make sure the code numbers match.


**4 Select the test mode**

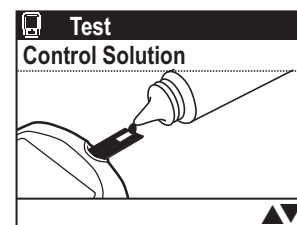
There are two options for testing:

“Test/Apply Blood” for fingertip, forearm, or palm testing. When “Test/Apply Blood” is at the top of the screen you may test using a fingertip, forearm, or palm blood sample.





## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

“Test/Control Solution” for a control solution test. If you are performing a control solution test, press  to scroll to the Test/Control Solution screen. See *Chapter 8 in Section II*, pages 159–162.

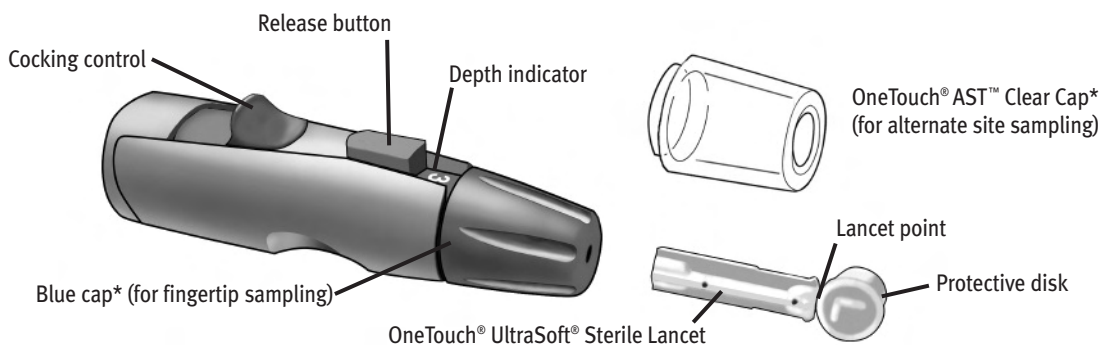


### NOTE:

- If the Test/Apply Blood screen appears before you are sure the codes match, press  to go back to the Match Code screen. Or, remove the test strip and re-start from step 1. See *Starting the Test Process*, pages 125–127 in this chapter.
- If you change from the Test/Apply Blood screen to the Test/Control Solution screen by mistake, press  to change it back to the Test/Apply Blood screen.

## Getting a blood sample

### Overview of the OneTouch® Lancing Device



\*The blue cap and OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap are also used for depth adjustment.

### CAUTION: To reduce the chance of infection:

- Make sure to wash the puncture site with soap and water before sampling.
- Never share a lancet or lancing device with anyone.
- Always use a new, sterile lancet—lancets are for single use only.
- Keep your meter remote and lancing device clean. See *Chapter 9 in Section II*, pages 163–166.

**NOTE:** If you do not have a OneTouch® Lancing Device, please refer to the instructions that came with your lancing device.



## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

## Choosing the right sampling site at the right time

Your meter remote allows you to sample blood from your fingertip, forearm, or palm. Forearm and palm testing is also referred to as “alternate site testing” (AST). At times, BG test results obtained at the forearm or palm may be different from a fingertip measurement. Talk to your health care professional before you begin using your forearm or palm for sampling.

If you are testing:	Use blood sample from your:
Routinely before meals	Fingertip, forearm, or palm
Prior to or more than two hours after: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a meal</li> <li>• a rapid-acting insulin injection or pump bolus</li> <li>• exercise</li> </ul>	
When your BG is changing rapidly, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• within two hours after a meal</li> <li>• within two hours after a rapid-acting insulin injection or pump bolus, or</li> <li>• during or within two hours after exercise</li> </ul>	Fingertip
When you are concerned about the possibility of hypoglycemia (low blood glucose)	

**⚠ CAUTION: Do Not** test on your forearm or palm when:

- You think your BG is rapidly falling, such as within two hours of exercise or a rapid-acting insulin injection or pump bolus. Testing with a fingertip sample may identify hypoglycemia or an insulin reaction sooner than testing with a forearm or palm sample.
- It has been less than two hours after a meal, a rapid-acting insulin injection or pump bolus, physical exercise, or you think your BG level is changing rapidly.
- You are concerned about the possibility of hypoglycemia or an insulin reaction, such as when driving a car. This is especially important if you suffer from hypoglycemia unawareness (lack of symptoms to indicate an insulin reaction).

Remember: Consult your health care professional before using your forearm or palm for testing.

Choose a different puncture site each time you test. Repeated punctures in the same spot may cause soreness and calluses.

If bruising occurs at an alternate site or you have difficulty getting a sample, consider sampling from a fingertip instead. You may want to review the choice of sites with your health care professional.

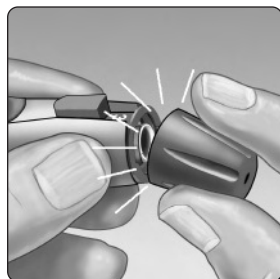
## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

## Preparing your sample site

Before you test your BG, wash your hands and forearm (if applicable) thoroughly with warm, soapy water. Rinse and dry.



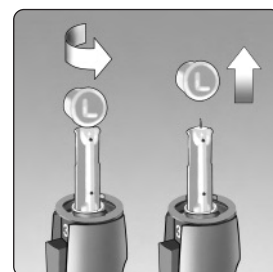
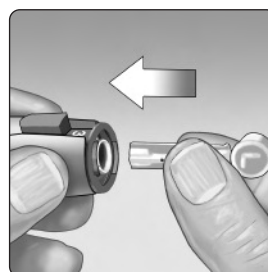
## Lancing and sampling from your fingertip



**1 Remove the blue cap by snapping it off**

### 2 Install a sterile lancet into the OneTouch® Lancing Device

Insert the lancet into the holder and push in firmly. Twist the protective disk until it separates from the lancet and save the disk for later use. **Do Not** twist the lancet.

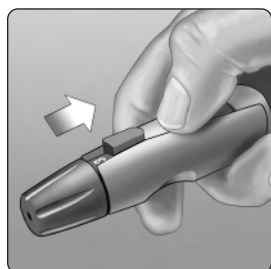
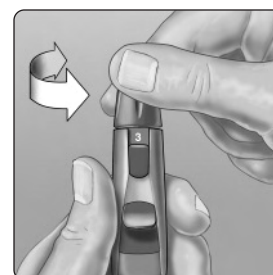


### 3 Replace the blue cap by snapping it back on

### 4 Adjust the depth setting

The OneTouch® Lancing Device has nine puncture depth settings, numbered 1 through 9. The smaller numbers are for a shallower puncture and the larger numbers are for a deeper puncture. Shallower punctures work for children and most adults. Deeper punctures work well for people with thick or calloused skin. Twist the blue cap until the correct setting appears.

**NOTE:** A shallower puncture may be less painful. Try a shallower setting first and increase the depth until you find the one deep enough to get a sufficient drop of blood for testing (● sample size).



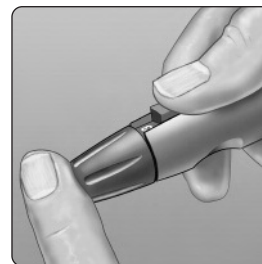
### 5 Cock the OneTouch® Lancing Device

Slide the cocking control back until it clicks. If it does not click, it may have been cocked when you inserted the lancet.

## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

**6 Puncture your finger**

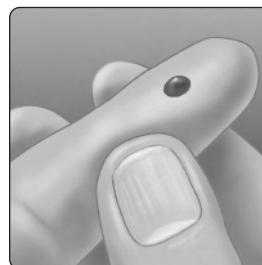
Hold the OneTouch® Lancing Device firmly against the side of your finger. Press the release button. Remove the OneTouch® Lancing Device from your finger.

**7 Get a round drop of blood**

Gently squeeze and/or massage your fingertip until a round drop of blood sufficient for testing forms (● sample size) on your fingertip.



If the blood smears or runs, **Do Not** use that sample. Dry the area and gently squeeze another drop of blood or puncture a new site.

**Lancing and sampling from an alternate site**

Sampling from your palm or forearm allows you to use your fingertips less often. You may find that obtaining a blood sample from an alternate site is less painful than using a fingertip. Getting a blood sample from your forearm or palm is different than getting a sample from your fingertips.

**Forearm sampling**

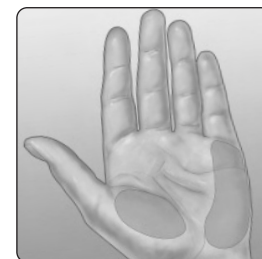
Choose a fleshy area of the forearm away from bone, visible veins and hair. Sometimes there is less blood flow to the forearm than to the fingertips. To help you get a large enough drop of blood, you may gently massage or apply warmth to the site to increase blood flow.



Forearm

**Palm sampling**

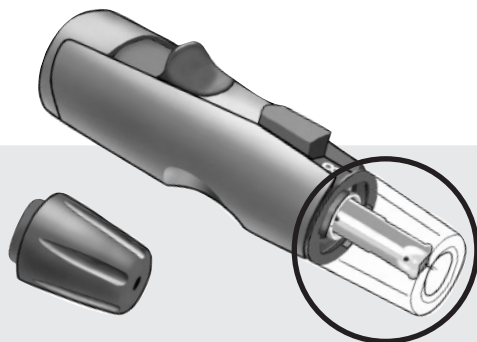
Choose a fleshy area on the palm below your thumb or pinky finger. Select a spot with no visible veins and away from deep lines which may cause your blood sample to smear.



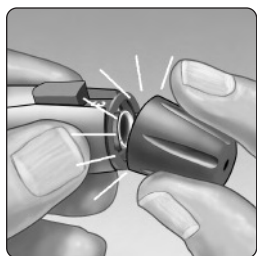
Palm

## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

Blue cap  
for fingertip  
sampling  
only



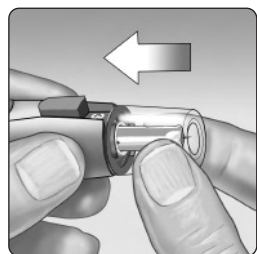
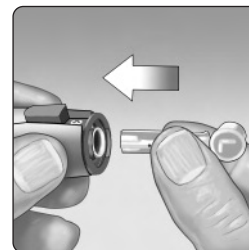
The OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap is used for forearm and palm sampling only. Replace the blue cap with the OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap.



### 1 Remove the blue cap by snapping it off

### 2 Insert a sterile lancet into the OneTouch® Lancing Device

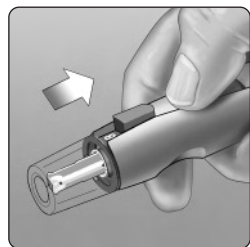
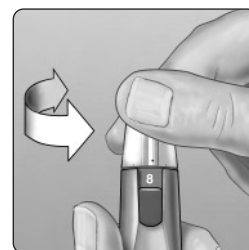
Insert the lancet into the holder and push in firmly. Twist the protective disk until it separates from the lancet and save the disk for later use. **Do Not** twist the lancet.



### 3 Install the OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap on the OneTouch® Lancing Device by snapping it on

### 4 Adjust the depth setting

You may have to adjust the OneTouch® Lancing Device to a deeper setting to get a large enough drop of blood from your forearm or palm. Twist the OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap toward the larger numbers to increase the depth.



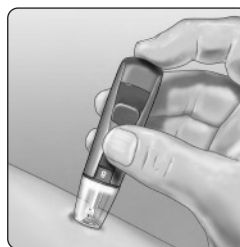
### 5 Cock the OneTouch® Lancing Device

Slide the cocking control back until it clicks. If it does not click, it may have been cocked when you inserted the lancet.

## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

**6 Puncture your forearm or palm**

Firmly press and hold the lancing device against your forearm or palm for a few seconds. **Wait until the skin surface under the OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap changes color (as blood collects beneath the skin). This tells you there is enough blood flow for a good sample.** Then press the release button while continuing to apply pressure. Keep holding the lancing device against your skin until a round drop of blood forms under the cap.



Forearm



Palm

When sampling blood from your forearm or palm, make sure the drop of blood is sufficient for testing (● sample size) before you release pressure and remove the lancing device.

**7 Remove the OneTouch® Lancing Device**

Carefully lift the lancing device away from your skin. **Do Not** smear the blood sample.

**NOTE:**

- You may need to wait a little longer to get a large enough drop of blood from the forearm or palm. **Do Not** squeeze the site excessively.
- If the sample drop of blood runs or spreads due to contact with hair or with a line in your palm, **Do Not** use that sample. Try puncturing again in a smoother area.
- Remember: You may have to adjust the lancing device to a deeper setting to get a large enough drop of blood (● sample size).

**Applying blood and reading BG test results**

Once you have a blood sample and your meter remote shows the Test/Apply Blood screen, you are ready to obtain a BG test result. If your meter remote does not show the Test/Apply Blood screen, remove the unused test strip and re-start the test process. See *Starting the Test Process*, pages 125–127 in this chapter.

**1 Prepare to apply the sample**

Keeping your finger extended and steady, move your meter remote and test strip toward the blood drop.



Fingertip



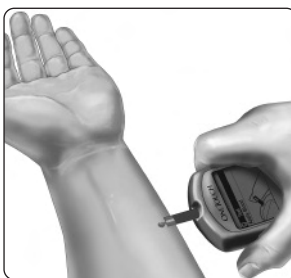
**Do Not** apply blood on the top of the test strip.

**Do Not** hold your meter remote and test strip underneath the blood drop. This may cause blood to run into the test port and damage your meter remote.



## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

When applying a drop of blood from your forearm or palm, keep your palm or forearm steady and bring the top edge of the test strip to the drop of blood with your other hand.



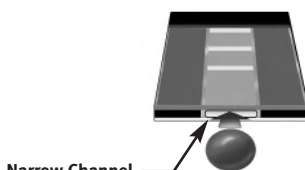
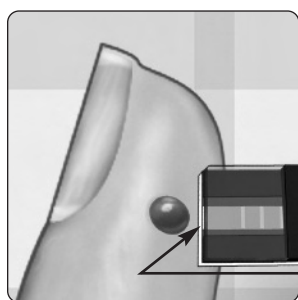
Forearm



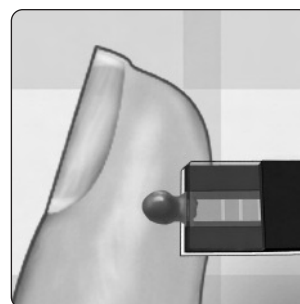
Palm

### 2 Apply the sample

Line up the strip with the blood drop so that the narrow channel on the edge of the test strip is almost touching the edge of the blood drop.



Narrow Channel



Gently touch the channel to the edge of the blood drop.



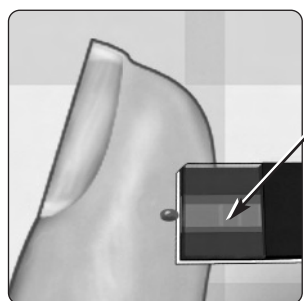
Be careful not to push the test strip against your fingertip or the test strip may not fill completely.

#### NOTE:

- **Do Not** smear or scrape the drop of blood with the test strip.
- **Do Not** apply more blood to the test strip after you have moved the drop of blood away.
- **Do Not** move the test strip in your meter remote during a test.

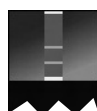
**⚠ CAUTION:** You may get an ERROR 5 message or an inaccurate BG test result if the blood sample does not fill the confirmation window completely. See *Chapter 10 in Section II*, pages 167–170. Discard the test strip and re-start the test process.

## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

**3 Wait for the confirmation window to fill completely**

The blood drop will be drawn into the narrow channel and the confirmation window should fill completely.

Confirmation Window



Full



Not Full

When the confirmation window is full, this means you have applied enough blood. Now you can move the test strip away from the blood drop and wait for your meter remote to count down from 5 to 1.

**4 Read your BG test result on your meter remote**

Your BG level appears on the display, along with the unit of measure, and the date and time of the test. BG test results are automatically stored in your meter remote's memory.



(Example)

**⚠ WARNING:** If mg/dL does not appear with the BG test result, call Customer Service at 999-999-9999. Use of the wrong unit of measure may cause you to misinterpret your BG level, and may lead to incorrect treatment.


**⚠ CAUTION:** If you test at the low end of the operating range (43°F) and your BG is high (over 180 mg/dL), the reading on your meter remote may be lower than your actual BG. In this situation, repeat the test in a warmer environment with a new test strip as soon as possible.

**Error messages**

If you get an ERROR message on your screen rather than a BG test result, see *Chapter 10* in *Section II*, pages 167–170.



## Unexpected BG test results

Refer to these cautions  whenever your BG test results are lower than, higher than, or not what you expect.

### **CAUTION: Dehydration and low BG test results**

You may get false low BG test results if you are severely dehydrated. If you think you are severely dehydrated, contact your health care professional immediately.

### **CAUTION: Low BG test results**

If your BG test result is lower than 70 mg/dL or is shown as LOW GLUCOSE, it may mean hypoglycemia (low BG). This may require immediate treatment according to your health care professional's recommendations. Although this BG test result could be due to a test error, it is safer to treat first, then do another test.

### **CAUTION: High BG test results**

If your BG test result is higher than 180 mg/dL, it may mean hyperglycemia (high BG). If you are uncertain about this BG test result, consider re-testing. Your health care professional can work with you to determine what actions, if any, you should take if your BG test results are higher than 180 mg/dL.

If your meter remote displays HIGH GLUCOSE, you may have a very high BG level (severe hyperglycemia) exceeding 600 mg/dL. Re-check your BG level. If the BG test result is HIGH GLUCOSE again, this may indicate a severe problem with your BG control and it is important that you obtain and follow instructions from your health care professional without delay.

### **CAUTION: Repeated unexpected BG test results**

If you continue to get unexpected BG test results, check your system with control solution. See *Chapter 8* in *Section II*, pages 159–162.

If you are experiencing symptoms that are not consistent with your BG test results and you have followed all instructions in this booklet, call your health care professional. Never ignore symptoms or make significant changes to your diabetes control program without speaking to your health care professional.

### **CAUTION: Unusual red blood cell count**

A hematocrit (percentage of your blood that is red blood cells) that is either very high (above 55%) or very low (below 30%) can cause false BG test results.




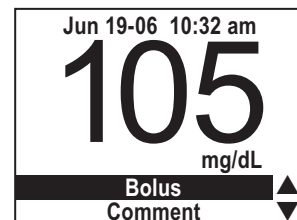
## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

## After getting a BG test result

Once you have read your BG test result, you may:

- Go directly to the Bolus Menu screen where you can calculate a bolus



“Bolus” will be highlighted. Press . See *Chapter 4* in *Section III*, pages 187–202 for using your meter remote to deliver a bolus.

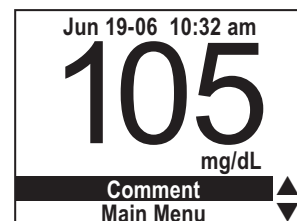
**NOTE:**

- RF communication must be activated on your meter remote and your pump, and the devices must be paired, before you will be able to use your meter remote to access pump functions. See *Chapter 2* in *Section III*, pages 175–184 for completing these procedures.

*or*

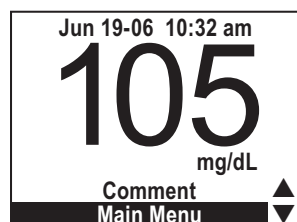
- Add comments to your BG test result that will be stored in your meter remote memory

Press  to highlight “Comment” and press . See *Chapter 5* in *Section II*, pages 139–142. You may also add a comment after you calculate and deliver a bolus, or to a BG test result that is already stored in your meter remote memory.



*or*

- Go to the Main Menu screen where you have access to all meter remote functions





Press  to highlight “Main Menu” and press .

*or*

## CHAPTER 4 - TESTING YOUR BLOOD GLUCOSE

Compare your previous BG test result and average with your current BG test result

Press  to highlight “Compare Result” and press . Your last BG test result and your average for the current meal period will appear on the screen.

Jun 19-06 10:32 am
<b>105</b>
mg/dL
Main Menu
Compare Result

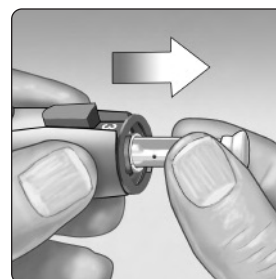
Your Result: <b>105</b>	
Previous Jun 19-06 7:40am	Aft Brkft Avg. 14 days
<b>99</b>	<b>109</b>

*or*

Remove the test strip to turn off your meter remote

### Removing the used lancet

Remove the lancing device cap by snapping it off. **Cover the exposed lancet tip before removing the lancet.** Place the lancet protective disk on a hard surface. Push the lancet tip into the disk. Remove the lancet and place it in a container for sharp objects. Replace the cap.





### Disposing of the used lancet and test strip

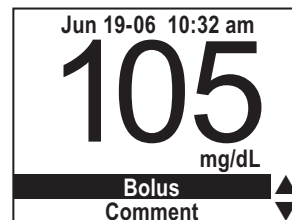
It is important to discard the used lancet carefully after each use to avoid unintended lancet stick injuries. Used test strips and lancets may be considered biohazardous waste in your area. Be sure to follow your local regulations for proper disposal, or follow your health care professional's recommendations for proper disposal of biohazardous waste.



## CHAPTER 5 - ADDING COMMENTS TO GLUCOSE TEST RESULTS

You may add comments to specific BG test results at the time of the test or at a later time. A food comment (indicating before-meal or after-meal testing) is automatically added to every BG test result. You may also add comments to note if the test was taken before, during, or after exercise, and how you were feeling at the time of the test. In all, you may add one food comment, one exercise comment, and up to six health comments to a BG test result.







If you would like to add a comment just after taking a test, press  to highlight “Comment” and press .



The following types of comments may be added:

TYPES OF COMMENTS	CHOICES
<b>Food</b>	Before Breakfast    After Breakfast Before Lunch        After Lunch Before Dinner        After Dinner Night
<b>Health</b>	Stress                Feel Hypo Illness                Menses (period) Vacation              Other
<b>Exercise</b>	Before During After

### Rules for adding comments to BG test results

- If you wish to add a comment to the current BG test result, press  to highlight “Comment” while viewing the BG test result and press . If you wish to add a comment to a BG test result at a later date, display the logbook record for that BG test result and press . See *Chapter 7 in Section II*, pages 149–158.
- A food comment is automatically assigned to every BG test result based on the pre-set or your personal meal schedule (see *Chapter 1 in Section II*, pages 105–120). You may edit that food comment as necessary.
- Press  to scroll up or down through the various menus and choices.
- Press  to make selections.
- You must save your selections by highlighting “Save” and then pressing .
- If you insert a test strip while you are adding comments to a BG test result, your comments (other than the food comment) will not be saved.
- To remove an entry, highlight “---” from the menu.

## CHAPTER 5 - ADDING COMMENTS TO GLUCOSE TEST RESULTS

## How to add a comment

Following are the steps you take to add a comment. In this example, we will add a food, exercise, and health comment to a BG test result.



With any BG test result on the display, highlight “Comment” and press .

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	Aft Brkft
<b>Health</b>	-----
Exer	-----
Save	



Jun 19-06 10:32 am <b>105</b> mg/dL	
<b>Comment</b>	
Main Menu	

“Health” is always highlighted first since the food comment is automatically assigned based on the pre-set or your personal meal schedule.

## Food comments

If you wish to change the food comment to a different mealtime, press  to highlight “Food” and press .

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
<b>Food</b>	Aft Brkft
Health	-----
Exer	-----
Save	






Press  to highlight your mealtime and press  again.

Your choices are “Bef Brkft”, “Aft Brkft”, “Bef Lunch”, “Aft Lunch”, “Bef Dinner”, “Aft Dinner”, and “Night”.

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
<b>Food</b>	-----
Health	Bef Brkft
Exer	Aft Brkft
Save	Bef Lunch
	Aft Lunch

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	Bef Lunch
<b>Health</b>	-----
Exer	-----
Save	

Once you select your mealtime, “Health” is highlighted again.

If you are finished commenting, press  to highlight “Save” and press . If you do not press , your entries will not be saved. If you wish to enter other comments, press  to highlight another menu choice and then press .

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	Bef Lunch
Health	-----
Exer	-----
<b>Save</b>	

## CHAPTER 5 - ADDING COMMENTS TO GLUCOSE TEST RESULTS

**Health comments**

You can comment on a BG test result with notes about your overall health at the time of the test. Press **OK** with “Health” highlighted. You may add up to six descriptors from this menu:

Stress                      Menses (period)  
 Feel Hypo                Vacation  
 Illness                    Other

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	----- ▲
<b>Health</b>	<b>Stress</b>
Exer	Feel Hypo
Save	Illness
	Menses ▼

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	Bef Lunch
Health 1	Stress
<b>Health 2</b>	-----
Exer	-----
Save	

After adding your first health comment, “Health 2” will automatically appear on the screen.

To add additional health comments, press **OK** and select another one from the menu. Note that your previous comment is no longer available.

When you have completed adding comments, press **Save** to highlight “Save” and press **OK**. If you do not press **OK**, your entries will not be saved.

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	----- ▲
Health 1	Feel Hypo
<b>Health 2</b>	Illness
Exer	Menses
Save	Vacation ▼

**Exercise comments**

You can comment on a BG test result as occurring before, during, or after exercise.

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	Bef Lunch
Health 1	Stress
Health 2	-----
Exer	After
<b>Save</b>	

After you add the exercise comment, “Save” will automatically be highlighted.


Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	Bef Lunch
Health	-----
<b>Exer</b>	Before
Save	During
	After ▼

If you press **OK**, all of the comments you have entered will appear with the BG test result in the logbook, as in this example.

<b>i Logbook</b>	
Jun 19-06 10:32am	
<b>Glucose 105 mg/dL</b>	
Bef Lunch	
Stress	
After Exer	

## CHAPTER 5 - ADDING COMMENTS TO GLUCOSE TEST RESULTS

## Editing or deleting comments (example)


To edit or delete a comment from a BG test result, first display that BG test result in your meter remote logbook (see *Chapter 7* in *Section II*, pages 149–158). Be sure the highlight is on the BG test result to which the comment is attached. Press .





Logbook	
Jun 19-06	10:32am
Glucose 105 mg/dL	
Bef Lunch	
Stress	
After Exer	

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	Bef Lunch
Health 1	Stress
Health 2	-----
Exer	After
Save	

To change the mealtime, highlight “Food” and press .

Jun 19-06 10:32 am Gluc.105 Comment	
Food	----- ▲
Health	Bef Brkft
	Aft Brkft
Exer	Bef Lunch
Save	Aft Lunch ▼

Highlight the desired mealtime and press  again. You may edit other comments at this time.

To delete a comment, press  to highlight “- - -” and press . When you have completed editing the comments, press  to highlight “Save” and press .

Your edited comment will appear this way in your meter remote logbook.

Logbook	
Jun 19-06	10:32am
Glucose 105 mg/dL	
Aft Brkft	
Stress	
After Exer	

**NOTE:** You can delete or edit comments, but you cannot delete a BG test result.









## CHAPTER 6 - MAKING LOGBOOK ENTRIES


Logbook entries let you store separate records concerning exercise, health, and food that are not associated with a BG test result. Logbook entries are different than comments, which are added to a specific BG test result. You do not have to perform a BG test in order to add valuable information to your meter remote logbook.

Entries are saved as stand-alone logbook records with an assigned date and time.

### Rules for adding logbook entries

ENTRY TYPES	CHOICES
<b>Exercise</b>	<i>Level:</i> Mild Moderate Hard <i>Duration:</i> Length of time
<b>Health</b>	<i>Health Notes:</i> Stress Feel Hypo Illness Menses (period) Vacation Other
<b>Food</b>	Carbs (total carb amounts for a meal or snack)
<b>Pump</b>	Date and time of infusion set changes

- If you wish to add a new logbook entry, press  to highlight “Add Logbook Entry” on the Main Menu screen and press . Press  to highlight the entry type on the Add New Entry screen and press . A graphic icon representing the entry type will appear in the upper left-hand corner of the screen.
- Before adding an entry, the date and time must be selected. Press  to choose either the current date and time displayed or “Other Time”.
- Press  to confirm your choices and the logbook record screen will appear. If no logbook record screen appears, your entries have not been saved.
- If you insert a test strip while you are adding a logbook record, your record will not be saved.
- It is possible to enter the same entry type more than once for a given date and time.
- To remove an entry, press  to highlight “---” from the menu.
- Prior to viewing the logbook record screen, you may press  and return to the previous screen to review or edit the information you have entered.
- When making logbook entries, the starting values for entering data will be the ones you last saved.

 <b>Main Menu</b>
<b>Bolus</b>
<b>FastFacts</b>
<b>Meter Settings</b>
<b>Add Logbook Entry</b>
<b>System Status</b>



## CHAPTER 6 - MAKING LOGBOOK ENTRIES

## Entering the date and time for an entry

Add New Entry
Exercise
Health
Food
Pump

A date and time must be selected after choosing an entry type. In this example, the date and time will be selected for an Exercise entry.

If the entry is for the current date and time, press .

If the entry is for a previous date and time, press to highlight “Other Time” and press .

Exercise Entry
Add New Entry for
Jun 19-06 3:18 pm
Other Time

Select Entry Date
Jun-06
1 2 3
4 5 6 7 8 9 10
11 12 13 14 15 16 17
18 19 20 21 22 23 24
25 26 27 28 29 30

A calendar will appear on the screen for the current month as it is stored in your meter remote, and the current day will be highlighted. Press to scroll to the desired day for the logbook entry. Each time you scroll backward past the first day of the month, the previous month’s calendar will appear.

Press when you have the correct month and day highlighted.

Press to enter the time in hours and minutes and then press after each selection. If you have selected the am/pm time format, “am” or “pm” will be displayed next to the minutes and will be highlighted. Press to scroll to the correct am or pm setting. Press to confirm your selection.

Jun 19-06
What time?
8:30 am

Then make your logbook entry.

*Exercise entries*

Press to highlight “Exercise” on the Add New Entry screen and press .

Add New Entry
Exercise
Health
Food
Pump

Exercise Entry
Add New Entry for
Jun 19-06 3:18 pm
Other Time

If the entry is for the current date and time press . Press to highlight “Other Time” and press if the entry is for a previous date and time.

## CHAPTER 6 - MAKING LOGBOOK ENTRIES

Press to rate the exercise you performed as Mild, Moderate, or Hard.  
Press .

Jun 19-06 3:18 pm Exercise Entry	
Exercise	Moderate
Duration	00:45

Then press to record the duration of the exercise to the nearest five minutes. Press to save the entry.

Jun 19-06 3:18 pm Exercise Entry	
Exercise	-----
Duration	Mild
	Moderate
	Hard

The exercise entry will be saved this way in your meter remote logbook.

Logbook	
Jun 19-06 3:18 pm	
Exercise	
Moderate	00:45

### Health entries

Health entries let you enter information about your health status. To add a health entry, press to highlight “Health” on the Add New Entry screen and press . Follow the steps as described in the *Entering the date and time for an entry*, page 144 in this chapter to select the correct time and date of the new entry.

Choose from this menu:

Stress	Menses (period)
Feel Hypo	Vacation
Illness	Other

Jun 19-06 3:18 pm Health Notes	
-----	▲
Stress	
Feel Hypo	
Illness	
Menses	
Vacation	▼

Press to save and view the Health Notes entry.

The health entry with your Health Note will be saved this way in your meter remote logbook.



Add New Entry	
Exercise	
Health	
Food	
Pump	

Logbook	
Jun 19-06 3:18 pm	
Stress	


## CHAPTER 6 - MAKING LOGBOOK ENTRIES


**Food entries**

Food and BG levels are closely linked. Food entries let you keep track of carb amounts either entered manually, or selected from the Food Database.

Press  to highlight “Food” on the Add New Entry screen and press . Follow the same steps to select the correct time and date of the new entry.

 Jun 19-06 3:18 pm <b>Food Entry</b> ----- Breakfast <b>Lunch</b> Dinner Snack Alcohol
--

Select the desired meal, snack, or alcohol descriptor and press .

 <b>Add New Entry</b> Exercise Health <b>Food</b> Pump
---



On the Food Entry/Edit screen highlight “Carb Entry” if you would like to add a carb amount manually, or “Food List” if you would like to refer to the Food Database. The Food Database includes carb amounts for hundreds of food types.


 <b>Food Entry Edit</b>  Carb Entry <b>Food List</b>
--

**NOTE:** If you select “Alcohol” from the Food Entry screen above, you will not be able to enter a specific carb amount. Instead, a logbook entry will be made indicating “Alcohol” at the time and date for the logbook entry.

**Manual carb entry**

To add a carb amount manually, highlight “Carb Entry” and press .


Then press  to highlight the desired carb amount. Carbs are entered in 1-gram steps in the range of 0 to 999. Press  when finished.

 <b>Logbook</b> Jun 19-06 3:18 pm <b>Lunch</b> Carbs: 60
--

The food entry will be saved this way in your meter remote logbook.

**NOTE:** If you enter “0” carbs, this value will be included in your Food averages when viewing data (see *Chapter 7 in Section II*, pages 149–158).

**Do Not** enter “0” (leave entry as “-----”) if you do not want this value included in your averages.

 <b>Lunch Information</b>  Carbs: <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">-----</span>
--

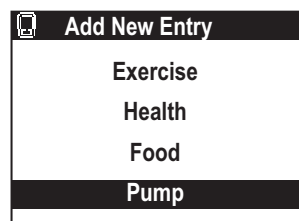
## CHAPTER 6 - MAKING LOGBOOK ENTRIES

### Food Database carb entry

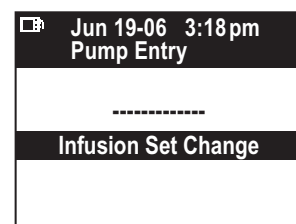
To add a carb amount from the Food Database, highlight “Food List” and press **OK**. Then follow the instructions in the Food Database chapter (see *Chapter 2* in *Section II*, pages 121–122) for making selections. When you are finished choosing your carb amount from the Food Database, you will go to the Logbook screen for your selected meal where you can modify or delete your entry in your meter remote logbook.

### Pump entries

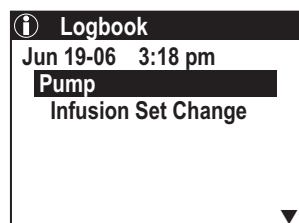
Once you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system, you may also wish to keep track of your infusion set changes in your meter remote logbook.



Press **OK** to highlight “Pump” on the Add New Entry screen and press **OK**. Follow the steps for selecting the correct time and date of the new entry. You may track the date and time of every infusion set change.



To record when you changed your infusion set, press **OK** to highlight “Infusion Set Change” and press **OK**.

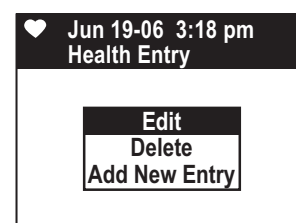
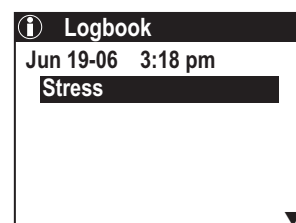


Your pump entry will be saved this way in your meter remote logbook.

### Editing or deleting logbook entries

To edit or delete a logbook entry, first display that logbook entry in your meter remote logbook (see *Chapter 7* in *Section II*, pages 149–158). Make sure the logbook entry icon, date and time, and description are correct for the logbook entry you wish to edit or delete. Then press **OK**.




Select “Edit” to change the logbook entry or “Delete” to remove it completely, and then press **OK**.

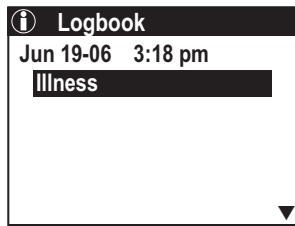


---

**CHAPTER 6 - MAKING LOGBOOK ENTRIES**

---

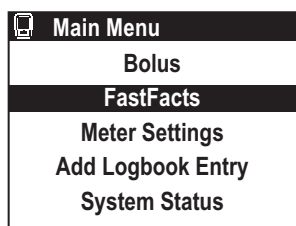
To edit an entry, highlight the descriptor you would like to change and press . Press  to change the entry and press .



For example, the edited entry will appear this way in your logbook if you choose to select “Illness” instead of “Stress”.

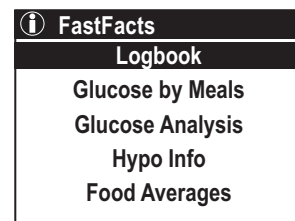
## CHAPTER 7 - FASTFACTS® / USING YOUR METER REMOTE LOGBOOK

The FastFacts screen lets you review and edit data records stored in your meter remote memory. You can also perform on-screen trending of BG, and other health-related data.



To get to the FastFacts screen, press to highlight “FastFacts” on the Main Menu screen and press .

When you choose “FastFacts” on the Main Menu screen, an additional menu of options appears.



### FastFacts screen options

#### *Logbook (Meter Remote Memory)*

Scroll through BG test results and other health data entries, by date and time.

#### *Glucose by Meals*

Display BG test results by date, before and after meals.

#### *Glucose Analysis*

Analyze your BG test results in more detail through charts and graphs that organize your data several different ways.

- Graph of All Results - An interactive graph of all BG test results by date.
- Graph by Time of Day - A graph of BG test results by time of day.
- Average of All Results - The average of all BG test results taken for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days.
- Average by Time of Day – BG test result averages by time of day for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days.
- Average by Exercise - BG test result averages before, during, and after exercise.
- Glucose Range Info - The percent of BG test results within, above, and below your target range, before and after meals, for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days.

#### *Hypo Info*

Review incidents of hypoglycemic events (BG test results below your pre-set or personal level stored in your meter remote), before and after meals, for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days. See *Chapter 1* in *Section II*, pages 105–120, and consult with your health care professional before setting your hypoglycemic level.

## CHAPTER 7 - FASTFACTS® / USING YOUR METER REMOTE LOGBOOK

**Food Averages**

Average your daily intake of carbohydrates, for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days.

**Logbook**

Your meter remote logbook stores at least 20,000 logbook records. Logbook records are created whenever data are saved for a particular time and date. Three types of logbook records are stored in your meter remote:

- **BG test results with or without added comments**



BG test results are automatically stored as logbook records whenever you take a test. Date and time are tagged to the BG test result. A food comment is always attached to the BG test result based on the pre-set or your personal meal schedule. You may add other comments to the BG test result by accessing the logbook at the time of the test or at a later time. You may also edit or delete comments attached to the BG test result.

BG test results may not be deleted from the logbook.

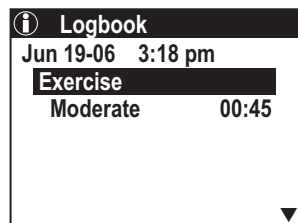
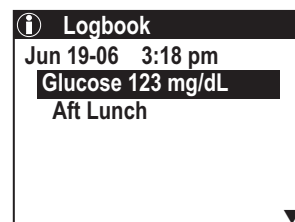
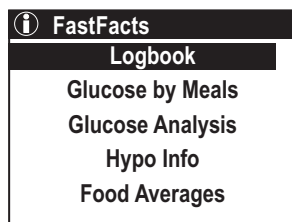
- **Health-related data (logbook entries) not associated with a BG test result**


Health-related data may be added either as stand-alone logbook entries for a specific date and time. As with comments, you may also edit or delete health-related logbook records.


**Viewing logbook records**

To review your logbook entries, press  to highlight “Logbook” on the FastFacts screen and then press .

Your most recent logbook entry will appear on the display.



Press  to scroll through previous logbook records.

To edit or delete a data record, press  when that data record is on the display. You will then have the option to edit, delete, and/or add a new logbook entry. Your options are defined by the type of data record you were viewing on the display.

## CHAPTER 7 - FASTFACTS® / USING YOUR METER REMOTE LOGBOOK

### NOTE:

- You cannot delete or edit a BG test result, but you can edit any comment associated with those types of records. You can, however, delete any logbook record that is not associated with a BG test result.
- When adding a new logbook entry, you have the option of creating a record for the current time and date or for a previous time and date.

### Glucose by Meals

To review before-meal and after-meal BG test results, press to highlight “Glucose by Meals” on the FastFacts screen and press .

Glucose by Meals
Breakfast
Lunch
Dinner
Night

Highlight the desired mealtime and press .

FastFacts
Logbook
<b>Glucose by Meals</b>
Glucose Analysis
Hypo Info
Food Averages

A summary of all BG test results by date before and after the chosen meal (or at night) will appear. Press to view more entries.

Press to return to the FastFacts screen.

Glucose by Meals
Bef Brkft Aft Brkft
Jun 19 80 120 ▲
Jun 18 100 115
Jun 17 70 125
Jun 16 140 110
Jun 15 70 95
Jun 14 95 112 ▼

### Glucose Analysis

When you select “Glucose Analysis” on the FastFacts screen, an additional menu of choices appears.

Press to highlight the desired choice and then press .

FastFacts
Logbook
Glucose by Meals
<b>Glucose Analysis</b>
Hypo Info
Food Averages

Glucose Analysis
<b>Graph of All Results</b>
Graph by Time of Day
Average of All Results
Average by Time of Day
Average by Exercise
Glucose Range Info



## Graph of All Results

To view an interactive graph of three days (at a time) of BG test results, press to highlight “Graph of All Results” on the Glucose Analysis screen and press .

The first screen provides instructions for moving from one time period to the next, and for examining a particular BG test result more closely. Press to continue.

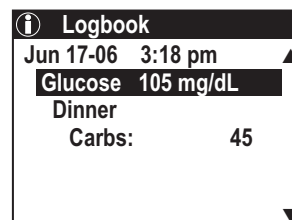
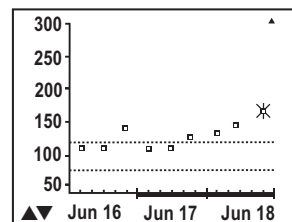
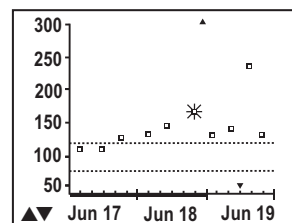
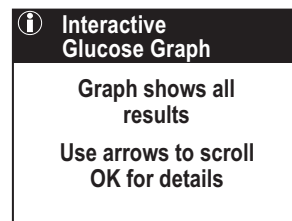
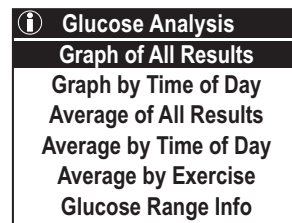
The most recent three days of BG test results appear on a graph with the currently selected BG test result flashing.

A bold bar above the dates indicates a weekend. The two dotted lines indicate the lowest and highest values of your before-meal and after-meal glucose ranges (see *Chapter 1 in Section II*, pages 105–120). If you have not selected an after-meal range, only the before-meal range will appear. BG test results above 300 mg/dL or below 50 mg/dL are indicated by an arrow at the top or bottom edge of the graph.

You may scroll backward or forward in time on the graph by pressing to move from one point to another. Individual BG test results will flash as you scroll.

To view the details of a test, press while that BG test result is flashing. Press to return to the graph. You may move back and forth between the graph and the logbook as often as you wish.

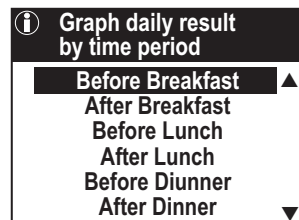
Press while any graph is displayed to return to the Glucose Analysis screen.



## CHAPTER 7 - FASTFACTS® / USING YOUR METER REMOTE LOGBOOK

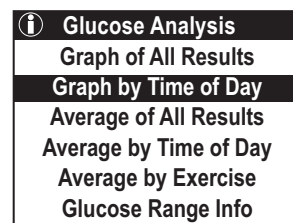
### Graph by Time of Day

You may view BG test results on a graph by time of day when you select “Graph by Time of Day” on the Glucose Analysis screen and press **OK**.



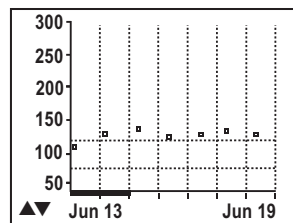
Highlight the desired time of day and press **OK**. The time of day is based on the pre-set or your personal meal schedule (see *Chapter 1* in *Section II*, pages 105–120).

You will be reminded of the time period you chose for the graph that follows. Press **OK** to continue.



The most recent seven days of BG test results appear on a graph.

A bold bar above the dates indicates a weekend. The two dotted lines indicate the lowest and highest values of your before-meal and after-meal glucose ranges (see *Chapter 1* in *Section II*, pages 105–120). If you have not selected an after-meal range, only the before-meal range will appear. BG test results above 300 mg/dL or below 50 mg/dL are indicated by an arrow at the top or bottom edge of the graph.



Press **Left Arrow** to scroll forward or backward in time. The graph will update (move one day) with each press of **Left Arrow**.

Press **OK** to return to the Glucose Analysis screen.

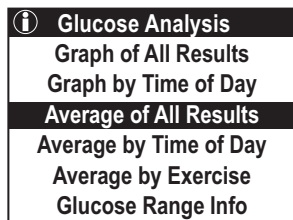
### Average of All Results

To view your BG test result averages over a pre-defined number of days, press **Left Arrow** to highlight “Average of All Results” on the Glucose Analysis screen and press **OK**.

Average of all Results		
	Number of Days	Avg
(31)	7	115
(42)	14	119
(48)	30	120
(54)	60	118
(73)	90	157

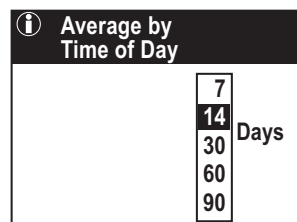
BG test result averages are displayed for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days with the number of tests completed during that time period included in parentheses.

Press **OK** to return to the Glucose Analysis screen.



## Average by Time of Day

To view your BG test result averages by time of day, press to highlight “Average by Time of Day” on the Glucose Analysis screen and press .



Test averages by time of day are available for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days. Highlight the desired time period and press .

BG test result averages are displayed for the period you selected, with the number of tests completed during that time period included in parentheses. The time of day is based on the pre-set or your personal meal schedule (see *Chapter 1 in Section II*, pages 105–120).

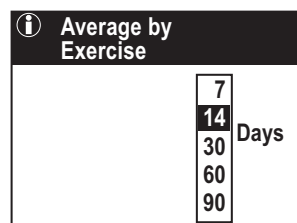
Press to return to the Glucose Analysis screen.

Glucose Analysis
Graph of All Results
Graph by Time of Day
Average of All Results
<b>Average by Time of Day</b>
Average by Exercise
Glucose Range Info

Avg. by Time of Day - 14 Days		
(14)	Bef Brkft	95
(14)	Aft Brkft	135
(14)	Bef Lunch	80
(14)	Aft Lunch	128
(6)	Bef Dinner	125
(7)	Aft Dinner	155

## Average by Exercise

To view your BG test result averages before, during, and after exercise, press to highlight “Average by Exercise” on the Glucose Analysis screen and press .



BG test result averages before, during, and after exercise are available for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days. Highlight the desired time period and press .

BG test result averages are displayed before, during, and after exercise for the period you selected, with the number of tests completed during that time period included in parentheses.

Press to return to the Glucose Analysis screen.

Glucose Analysis
Graph of All Results
Graph by Time of Day
Average of All Results
Average by Time of Day
<b>Average by Exercise</b>
Glucose Range Info

Avg. by Exercise 14 Days		
(14)	Before Exercise	125
(3)	During Exercise	103
(14)	After Exercise	110

## CHAPTER 7 - FASTFACTS® / USING YOUR METER REMOTE LOGBOOK

**Glucose Range Info**

To review the percentage of your BG test results that are above, below, and within your target ranges, press to highlight “Glucose Range Info” on the Glucose Analysis screen and press .

Percentages will be calculated for the before- and after-meal ranges you entered in the Set-up mode.

Choose either “Before Meal” or “After Meal” averages and press .

“Before Meal” and “After Meal” BG test results are based on the pre-set or your personal meal schedule (see *Chapter 1* in *Section II*, pages 105–120).

Before Meal Glucose Range 90-130
Breakfast
Lunch
Dinner
Night
Total

Highlight the desired time of day and press .

Percentages can be viewed for the last 7, 14, 30, 60, or 90 days. Highlight the desired time period and press .

The percentage of your BG test results that are above, below, and within your target range will appear for the time period selected, with the number of tests that make up that percentage included in parentheses.


**NOTE:** Sometimes percentages may not total 100% exactly due to rounding.

Press to return to the Glucose Analysis screen.

Glucose Analysis
Graph of All Results
Graph by Time of Day
Average of All Results
Average by Time of Day
Average by Exercise
Glucose Range Info

Glucose Range Info
Before Meal
After Meal

Bef Brkft Glucose Range 90-130
7
14
30
60
90
Days

 Bef Brkft Glucose Range 90-130		
(6)	Above	20%
(5)	In Range	70%
(3)	Below	10%

## Hypoglycemia Information

If you select “Hypo Info” on the FastFacts screen, your meter remote will display the actual number of hypoglycemic events by time of day, defined by the hypo level set in Advanced Features (see *Chapter 1 in Section II*, pages 105–120).

Hypo Info (70 mg/dL or less)	
7	Days
14	
30	
60	
90	

Highlight the desired time period for viewing the number of hypoglycemic events and press **OK**.

The number of events before and after meals and during the night for the selected time period is displayed.

Before-meal and after-meal events are based on the pre-set or your personal meal schedule (see *Chapter 1 in Section II*, pages 105–120).

Press **OK** to return to the FastFacts screen.

FastFacts	
Logbook	
Glucose by Meals	
Glucose Analysis	
Hypo Info	
Food Averages	

Hypo Info (70 mg/dL or less)	
Total - 14 Days:	4
Bef Brkft	1
Aft Brkft	0
Bef Lunch	2
Aft Lunch	0

## Food Averages

Select “Food Averages” on the FastFacts screen to view average daily intake of carbohydrates over the last 7, 14, 30, 60, and 90 days. Averages may be displayed for the meal periods you selected when making logbook entries, or as a daily average.

Food Averages	
Breakfast	
Lunch	
Dinner	
Snack	
Daily Average	

Press **OK** to select the desired meal period and press **OK**.

Food Averages	
7	Days
14	
30	
60	
90	

Then press **OK** to select the number of days and press **OK**.

FastFacts	
Logbook	
Glucose by Meals	
Glucose Analysis	
Hypo Info	
Food Averages	

Food Averages	
Breakfast	
14 Day (Avg.)	
(14) Carbs	45

Your daily carbohydrate average will appear to the right on the screen. The number of entries used for that average appears in parentheses to the left.

Press **OK** to return to the FastFacts screen.

## Downloading meter remote logbook records to a PC

It's important to save the data in your meter remote memory on a regular basis. Your meter remote memory will store at least 20,000 records but will eventually fill up if you do not transfer the data to a PC and/or other storage device. If your meter remote memory becomes full, the oldest records will be replaced by the newest records as they are created. You can use your meter remote with ezManager® Software (provided with your pump) for storing your records, and to help you spot patterns for planning meals, exercise, and medication. ezManager® Software puts information downloaded from your meter remote into charts and graphs.

Transferring BG test results to your PC for storage or home viewing requires ezManager® Software from Animas® and a USB 2.0 compliant Type 'A' to Mini 'B' Interface Cable. The USB Interface Cable is included with your OneTouch® Symphony™ System Kit.

**NOTE:** To ensure safe operation of your meter remote when connecting it to a PC, the computer must have an appropriate safety approval as indicated by the presence of one or more of the following logos (UL, CSA, or CE) on the PC or monitor. Also check to see if the PC is connected correctly to its power source.

### ⚠ WARNING:

- **Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can build up when it's very dry and/or while you are wearing certain synthetic clothing. To reduce ESD build-up and possible damage to your meter remote, first touch a grounded metal surface (such as a doorknob) before connecting your meter remote to a PC with the USB Cable.**
- **To avoid a possible shock, Do Not insert a test strip or change the batteries when your meter remote is connected to a PC with the USB Cable.**


### 1 Install the software on your PC

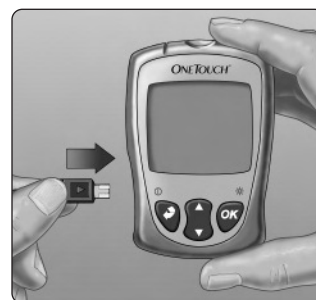
Follow the installation instructions provided with ezManager® Software.

### 2 Get ready to transfer readings

Connect the Type 'A' end of the USB Cable to a USB port on your PC. With your meter remote turned on, connect the Mini 'B' end of the USB Cable to the data port located on the lower left side of your meter remote. Be sure the Mini 'B' plug is inserted all the way.

After you plug the USB Cable into the data port, "PC" will appear on your meter display. This indicates that your meter remote is in communication mode. You will not be able to perform a test when your meter remote is in communication mode.

If the data transfer command is not received within one minute, your meter remote will turn itself off. Press the  button to turn the meter back on.



PC

### 3 Transfer data

Follow the instructions provided with ezManager® Software to download the BG test results from your meter remote. Once you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system, you can use ezManager® Software to download and combine insulin delivery data from your pump with BG management data from your meter remote.

## CHAPTER 8 - CONTROL SOLUTION TESTING

### Control solution testing

OneTouch® Ultra® Control Solution contains a known amount of glucose and is used to check that your meter remote and the test strips are working properly.

Do a control solution test:

- To practice the test process instead of using blood.
- Once a week.
- Whenever you open a new vial of test strips.
- If you suspect your meter remote or test strips are not working properly.
- If you have had repeated unexpected BG test results (as described in *Unexpected BG test results* in *Chapter 4* in *Section II*, pages 125–138).
- If you drop or damage your meter remote.

#### CAUTION:

- **Do Not** swallow control solution; it is not for human consumption.
- **Do Not** apply control solution to the skin or eyes as it may cause skin or eye irritation.
- The control solution range printed on the test strip vial is for OneTouch® Ultra® Control Solution only. It is not a recommended range for your blood glucose level.
- If you continue to get control solution test results that fall outside the range printed on the test strip vial, **Do Not** use your meter remote, the test strips, or control solution. Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.

#### NOTE:

- Use OneTouch® Ultra® Control Solution with your meter remote. For information on a second level of control solution, contact Customer Service.
- Control solution tests must be done at room temperature (68–77°F). Make sure your meter remote, test strips, and control solution are at room temperature before testing.



## CHAPTER 8 - CONTROL SOLUTION TESTING

## Performing a control solution test

**1 Check the code on the test strip vial before inserting the test strip.**

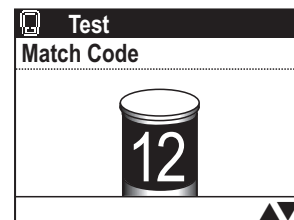


**2 Insert a test strip to turn on your meter remote.**



Make sure the three contact bars are facing you. Push the test strip in as far as it will go. **Do Not** bend the test strip.

An all-black start-up screen will be followed by an hourglass symbol and then the Match Code screen.

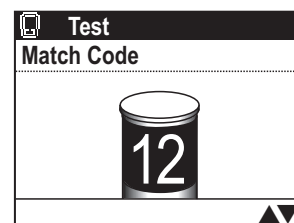


(Example)

**⚠ CAUTION:** If the graphics appear to be different, call Customer Service at 999-999-9999. There may be a problem with your meter remote.

**3 Match the code displayed on your meter remote with the code on the test strip vial.**

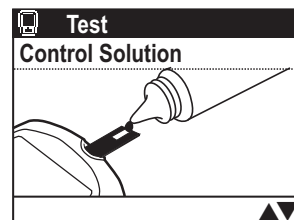
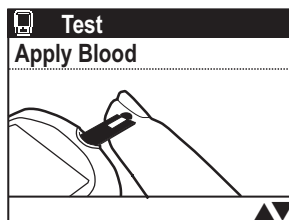
If the code on your meter remote does not match the code on the test strip vial, press **⏏** to match the code number on the test strip vial. The new code number will flash on the display for three seconds, after which the display will advance to the Test/Apply Blood screen.



If the codes already match, press **OK** to go to the Test/Apply Blood screen. When you do not make a change after three seconds, the display will advance to the Test/Apply Blood screen.

**4 Set your meter remote for a control solution test.**

Press **⏏** to change “Apply Blood” to “Control Solution”. To mark a test as a control solution test, you must change “Apply Blood” to “Control Solution” before you apply the solution. It cannot be changed later.



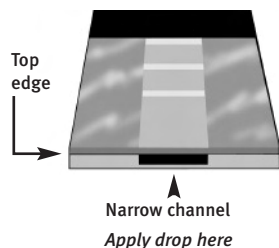
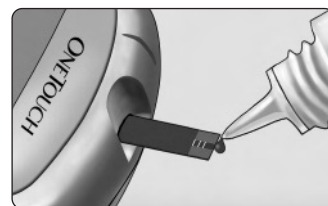
## CHAPTER 8 - CONTROL SOLUTION TESTING

**⚠ WARNING:** It is important that your control solution tests are marked correctly, as test results on your meter remote are used in ezCarb and ezBG Bolus calculations. Control solution tests that are not correctly marked can be used in bolus calculations. This may result in suggested bolus amounts that may be too high or too low, which can cause serious injury or death.

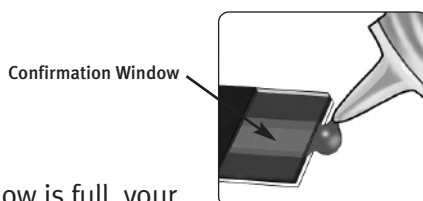
Your meter remote is now ready to perform a control solution test.

### 5 Prepare and apply the control solution.

Shake the control solution vial before each control solution test. Remove the cap and squeeze the vial to discard the first drop. Then wipe the tip with a clean tissue or cloth. Hold the vial upside down and gently squeeze a hanging drop.



Touch and hold the hanging drop of control solution to the narrow channel in the top edge of the test strip. Make sure the confirmation window fills completely. Control Solution should not be applied to the flat face of the test strip.



### 6 Read your result.

When the confirmation window is full, your meter remote will count down from 5 to 1.

Your control solution result will then appear on the screen, along with the date, time, unit of measure, and the words "Control Solution".

The control solution results can be viewed in the list of past results, but are not counted in your result averages.



### 7 Check if the result is in range.

Compare the result displayed on your meter remote to the control solution range printed on the test strip vial. Each vial of test strips may have a different control solution range. If the results you get are not within this range, your meter remote and strips may not be working properly. Repeat the control solution test.



100-135 mg/dL

Example

## CHAPTER 8 - CONTROL SOLUTION TESTING

Out-of-range results may be due to:

- Not following the instructions detailed in this chapter.
- Expired or contaminated control solution.
- Expired or damaged test strip.
- Use of a test strip or control solution past its discard date.
- A problem with your meter remote.

**⚠ CAUTION: Do Not** use the test strips or control solution after the expiration date printed on the vial or discard date, whichever comes first, or BG test results may be inaccurate.

**⚠ CAUTION: Do Not** use the test strips if your vial is damaged or left open to the air. This could lead to error messages or tests that read higher than the actual value. Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999 immediately if the test strip vial is damaged.

## CHAPTER 9 - CARING FOR YOUR METER REMOTE AND TEST STRIPS

Your meter remote does not need any special maintenance.

### Storing your system

Store your meter remote, test strips, control solution and other items in your carrying case after each use. Store each item in a cool, dry place below 86°F, but **do not** refrigerate. Keep all items away from direct sunlight and heat.

Tightly close the cap on the test strip vial and/or control solution vial immediately after use to avoid contamination or damage. Store test strips only in their original vial.

### Checking for expiration or damage

Test strips and control solution have expiration dates printed on their vials. When you first open a test strip or control solution vial, you must record the discard date (date opened plus three months) in the space provided on the label.

### Cleaning your meter remote

To clean your meter remote, wipe the outside with a soft cloth dampened with water and mild detergent. **Do Not** use alcohol or another solvent to clean your meter remote.

**Do Not** get any liquids, dirt, dust, blood, or control solution inside your meter remote through the test port or the data port. Never spray cleaning solution on your meter remote or immerse it in any liquid.

### Cleaning your OneTouch® Lancing Device and OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap

To clean these items, wipe them with a soft cloth dampened with water and mild detergent. **Do Not** immerse the OneTouch® Lancing Device in any liquid.

To disinfect these items, prepare a solution of one part household bleach to ten parts water. Wipe the OneTouch® Lancing Device with a soft cloth dampened with this solution. Immerse the **caps only** in this solution for 30 minutes. After disinfecting, rinse briefly with water and allow both to air dry.

### Batteries

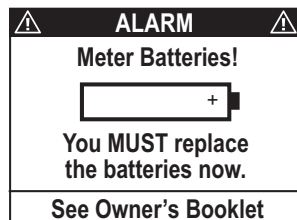
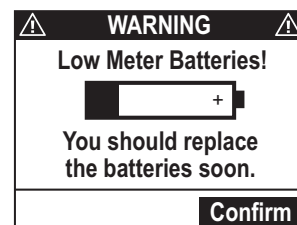
Your meter remote uses two AAA alkaline batteries. Batteries are provided with your meter remote but must be installed for your meter remote to power on. Replacement batteries can be found in most stores where batteries are sold.

**NOTE: Do Not** use lithium batteries in your meter remote. The use of the lithium batteries will significantly reduce the number of tests you can complete after the Low Meter Batteries warning screen appears.

## Low meter remote battery

When this message appears on the screen, the batteries are low and should be replaced as soon as possible. The backlight will no longer turn on.

You can complete about 100 more BG tests from the time this symbol first appears if you are using alkaline batteries.



When this message appears on the screen, you cannot test, enter data in your meter remote logbook, use your meter remote to access pump functions, or use the FastFacts® feature. You must replace the batteries before using your meter remote.

**⚠ WARNING:** Certain batteries may cause leaking, which can damage your meter remote or cause the batteries to lose power sooner than normal. As a result, your meter remote display may not turn on or may show a battery warning sooner than may be expected.

**⚠ WARNING:** To avoid a possible shock, Do Not change the batteries while your meter remote is connected to a PC with the USB Interface Cable.

## Installing/Replacing the batteries

### 1 Remove the old batteries (if replacing the batteries).

Open the battery compartment by pressing the tab to the right and lifting the compartment cover to remove it.

**NOTE:** Do Not use lithium batteries in your meter remote. The use of lithium batteries will significantly reduce the number of tests you can complete after the Low Meter Batteries warning screen appears.

Lift both batteries out of the compartment by pulling up on the ribbon.



### 2 Insert the new batteries.

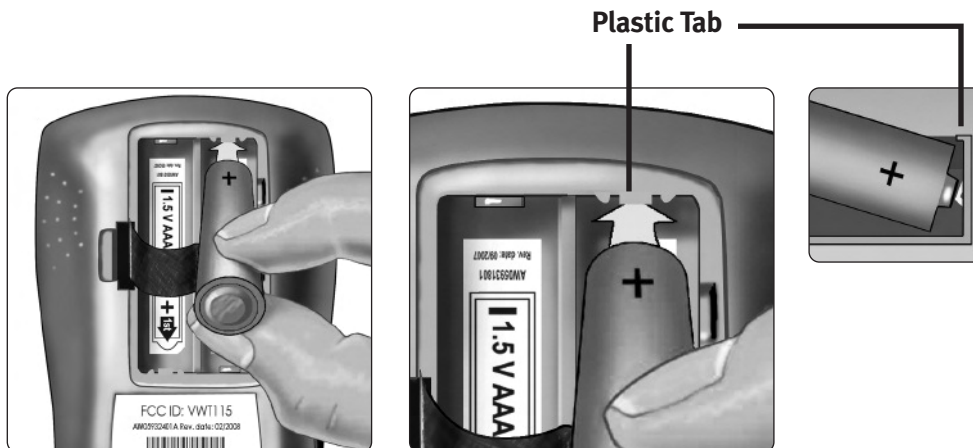


## CHAPTER 9 - CARING FOR YOUR METER REMOTE AND TEST STRIPS

Locate the plus (+) signs inside the battery compartment and on your fresh AAA alkaline batteries. Take the plus (+) end of one battery and insert it underneath the plastic tab that sticks out at the top of the compartment. Then push down on the minus (-) end of the battery until it clicks into place.

Repeat these steps with the second battery.

**NOTE:** You must insert the plus (+) end of each battery before the minus (-) end for the batteries to be installed correctly.



### 3 Replace the cover.

Insert the two compartment cover tabs into the matching holes, and push down until you hear the door click into place.

**NOTE:** When you install batteries, there will be a short delay of up to 30 seconds, as your meter remote performs a power-on self test. An hourglass symbol (⌚) will appear on the screen during that time.



### 4 Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental regulations.

**NOTE:**









- Your meter remote will automatically enter Basic Set-up mode when you turn your meter remote display on after installing batteries for the first time.
- Every time you replace your meter remote batteries, you have two minutes to complete the procedure for your date and time settings to remain saved in your meter remote memory. If more than two minutes elapse before the batteries are replaced, you may have to re-set the date and time. All other meter remote settings remain saved in your meter remote memory.



## CHAPTER 10 - UNDERSTANDING METER REMOTE ERROR AND OTHER MESSAGES









Your meter remote displays messages when there are problems with the test strip, with your meter remote, and when your BG levels are beyond the measurement limits (higher than 600 mg/dL or lower than 20 mg/dL). Display messages are in addition to LED and audio cues that alert you to meter remote problems. Messages do not appear in all cases when a problem has occurred. Improper use may cause an inaccurate BG test result without producing an error message. To clear a notification, warning, or alarm, you may need to remove the test strip and/or follow the prompts on your meter remote screen.

**IMPORTANT:** There are additional special messages that are displayed on your meter remote when you begin using your meter remote and pump together as a system. These include messages regarding communication problems between the devices or if your intended actions might require additional attention. A third set of special messages covers pump warnings, alarms, and alerts that appear on both your pump and meter remote displays. If a message is displayed on your meter remote and is not included in the list that follows, see *Chapter 6 in Section III* (pages 207–216) for a list of additional special messages.















INDICATES		WHAT TO DO
 <b>WARNING</b>  <b>LOW GLUCOSE</b> Below 20 mg/dL	You may have a very low BG level (severe hypoglycemia) lower than 20 mg/dL. Although this message could be due to a test error, it is safer to treat first, and then do another test.	<b>This may require immediate treatment according to your health care professional's recommendations.</b> Although this message could be due to a test error, it is safer to treat first, and then do another test.
 <b>WARNING</b>  <b>HIGH GLUCOSE</b> Above 600 mg/dL	You may have a very high BG level (severe hyperglycemia) exceeding 600 mg/dL.	Re-check your BG level. If the BG test result is HIGH GLUCOSE again, obtain and follow instructions from your health care professional without delay.
 <b>WARNING</b>  <b>LOW CONTROL</b> Below 20 mg/dL	Your control solution test result is very low and below the lower range printed on the test strip vial.	Repeat the test. If you continue to get control solution test results that fall below the range, <b>Do Not</b> use your meter remote. Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.
 <b>WARNING</b>  <b>HIGH CONTROL</b> Above 600 mg/dL	Your control solution test result is very high and above the upper range printed on the test strip vial.	Repeat the test. If you continue to get control solution test results that fall above the upper range, <b>Do Not</b> use your meter remote. Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.



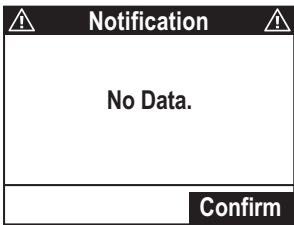

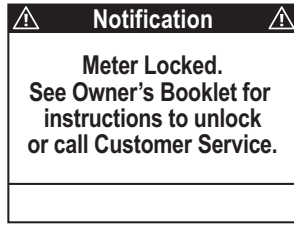




## CHAPTER 10 - UNDERSTANDING METER REMOTE ERROR AND OTHER MESSAGES

	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>  <p><b>Error 1</b> Meter problem Call Customer Service SC: XXX</p> </div>	<p>There is a problem with your meter remote.</p>	<p><b>Do Not</b> use your meter remote. Contact Customer Service at 999-999-9999 for a replacement.</p>
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>  <p><b>Error 2</b> Meter or strip problem. Retest with a new strip.</p> </div>	<p>Error message could be caused either by a used test strip or a problem with your meter remote.</p>	<p>Repeat the test with a new test strip; see <i>Chapter 4 in Section II</i>, pages 125–138. If this message continues to appear, contact Customer Service at 999-999-9999.</p>
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>  <p><b>Error 3</b> Meter was not ready. Retest with a new strip.</p> </div>	<p>The sample was applied before your meter remote was ready.</p>	<p>Repeat the test with a new test strip. Apply a blood or control solution sample only after “Test/Apply Blood” or “Test/Control Solution” appears on the screen. If this message continues to appear, call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.</p>
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>  <p><b>Error 4</b> Strip problem. See Owner’s Booklet.</p> </div>	<p><i>One of the following may apply:</i></p> <p>You may have high BG and have tested in an environment near the low end of the system’s operating temperature range (43–111°F).</p> <p><i>or,</i></p> <p>There may be a problem with the test strip. For example, it may have been damaged or moved during testing.</p> <p><i>or,</i></p> <p>The sample was improperly applied.</p> <p><i>or,</i></p> <p>There may be a problem with your meter remote.</p>	<p>If you tested in a cool environment, repeat the test in a warmer environment with a new test strip; see <i>Chapter 4 in Section II</i>, pages 125–138.</p> <p>If you tested in a normal or warm environment, repeat the test with a new test strip; <i>Chapter 4 in Section II</i>, pages 125–138.</p> <p>If you applied the blood incorrectly, review <i>Chapter 4 in Section II</i>, pages 125–138 and repeat the test with a new test strip.</p> <p>If the error message appears again, contact Customer Service at 999-999-9999.</p>

## CHAPTER 10 - UNDERSTANDING METER REMOTE ERROR AND OTHER MESSAGES

	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>  <p><b>Error 5</b> Strip problem or sample too small. Retest with a new strip.</p> </div>	<p>Your meter remote has detected a problem with the test strip. Possible causes are test strip damage or an incompletely filled confirmation window.</p>	<p>Repeat the test with a new test strip. Refer to <i>Chapter 4</i> in <i>Section II</i>, pages 125–138.</p>
<div> <p><b>Error 6</b></p>  </div>	<p>Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.</p>	<p>Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.</p>
<div> <p><b>Error 7</b></p>  </div>	<p>Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.</p>	<p>Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999.</p>
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>  <p>Temperature Error </p> <p>Out of operating range See Owner's Booklet</p> </div>	<p>Meter remote is too hot (above 111°F) or too cold (below 43°F) to work correctly.</p>	<p>Wait a few minutes and insert a new test strip. If you do not get TEMPERATURE ERROR message, your meter remote is now within operating range.</p>
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>  <p>Low Meter Batteries!</p>  <p>You should replace the batteries soon.</p> <p><b>Confirm</b></p> </div>	<p>Meter remote batteries are low but still have enough power to perform a test.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Warning. You can complete about 100 more tests from the time this message first appears if you are using alkaline batteries. Test results will still be accurate, but replace the batteries as soon as possible.</p>
<div>  <b>ALARM</b>  <p>Meter Batteries!</p>  <p>You <b>MUST</b> replace the batteries now.</p> <p>See Owner's Booklet</p> </div>	<p>Meter remote batteries do not have enough power to perform a test.</p>	<p>Replace your meter remote batteries.</p>

## CHAPTER 10 - UNDERSTANDING METER REMOTE ERROR AND OTHER MESSAGES

INDICATES		WHAT TO DO
 <p><b>Notification</b></p> <p>No Data.</p> <p>Confirm</p>	<p>You have accessed your meter remote memory (logbook) but there are currently no data available for this particular meter remote procedure.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Notification. Repeat the procedure after data records have been stored.</p>
 <p><b>Notification</b></p> <p>Meter Locked. See Owner's Booklet for instructions to unlock or call Customer Service.</p>	<p>Your meter remote buttons are currently locked. You will have very limited access to meter remote functions.</p>	<p>To unlock your meter remote buttons, press and hold  and  at the same time for about three seconds.</p>
 <p><b>Notification</b></p> <p>Food data not available for this food category.</p> <p>Confirm</p>	<p>You selected a food category for which there are no data in the Food Database stored in your meter remote.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Notification. Data may be available for this food category when you update the Food Database using ezManager® Software.</p>

## CHAPTER 11 - DETAILED INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR METER REMOTE AND TEST STRIPS

### Comparing meter remote and lab results

BG test results with your meter remote are plasma-calibrated. This helps you and your health care professional compare your meter remote results with laboratory tests. If you have been using another type of meter—one that provides whole-blood-calibrated BG test results—you may notice that BG test results with your meter remote are approximately 12% higher.

Your meter remote BG test results and laboratory test results both are expressed in plasma-equivalent units. However, your meter remote BG test result may differ from your laboratory result due to normal variation. Meter remote BG test results can be affected by factors and conditions that do not affect laboratory results in the same way.

Your meter remote BG value is considered accurate when it is within  $\pm 20\%$  of the laboratory measurement. There are some specific situations that could cause a difference of more than  $\pm 20\%$ :

- You have eaten recently. The BG level from blood obtained from a fingertip can be up to 70 mg/dL higher than blood drawn from a vein (venous sample) used for a lab test.<sup>1</sup>
- Your hematocrit (percentage of your blood that is red blood cells) is high (above 55%) or low (below 30%).
- You are severely dehydrated.
- You tested at a temperature near the low end of the operating range (43° F) and you get a high BG test result (i.e., greater than 180 mg/dL). In this situation, repeat the test in a warmer environment with a new test strip as soon as possible.

For accuracy and precision data and for important information on limitations, see the insert that comes with your test strips.

To maximize your chances of an accurate comparison between meter remote and laboratory results, follow a few basic guidelines:

### Before going to the lab

- Perform a control solution test to make sure your meter remote is working properly.
- **Do Not** eat for at least eight hours before you test your blood.
- Take your meter remote with you to the lab.

### While at the lab

- Conduct your meter remote test within 15 minutes of the lab test.
- Use only fresh, capillary blood obtained from the fingertip.
- Follow all instructions in this Owner's Booklet for performing a BG test with your meter remote.

<sup>1</sup>Sacks, D.B. "Carbohydrates." Burtis, C.A., and Ashwood E.R. (ed.), *Tietz Textbook of Clinical Chemistry*. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Company, (1994), 959.

## Technical Specifications

### Reported BG Test

**Result Range:** 20 to 600 mg/dL

**Calibration:** Plasma-equivalent

**Sample:** Fresh capillary whole blood

**Test Time:** 5 seconds

**Assay Method:** Glucose oxidase biosensor

**Power Source:** Two 1.5V AAA alkaline batteries

**Unit of measure:** mg/dL

**Memory:** At least 20,000 records


**Automatic Shutoff:** Three minutes after inserting a test strip if sample has not been applied or during pairing; one minute after all other user actions

**Size:** 3.80 x 2.46 x 1.12 inches

**Weight:** Approximately 3.88 ounces (with batteries)

**Operating Ranges:** Temperature: 43–111°F (6–44°C) • Relative Humidity: 10–90%,  
Altitude: up to 10,000 feet • Hematocrit: 30–55%

**Battery ratings:** 2 x 1.50 V d.c • (2 x AAA alkaline batteries) •  direct current

**Symbols:**  Please refer to safety-related notes in the owner's booklet and inserts that come with your OneTouch® Meter Remote.

 Direct current

**Electrical Standards:** Your meter remote complies with applicable EMC emission requirements. Emissions of the energy used are low and not likely to cause interference in nearby electrical equipment.

Your meter remote complies with US Federal Regulations 47 CFR Part 15. Your meter remote has been tested for immunity to electrostatic discharge (ESD) as specified in ISO 15197 and IEC 61000-4-2.

Your meter remote has been tested for immunity to radio frequency interference at the frequency range and test levels specified in ISO 15197.

Degree of protection rating: IPX1

**Guarantee:** LifeScan guarantees that your OneTouch® Meter Remote will be free of defects in material and workmanship for four years, valid from the date of purchase. The guarantee extends only to the original purchaser and is not transferable.

## Analytical Performance Characteristics

### Accuracy

The accuracy of the blood glucose monitoring function of the OneTouch® Meter Remote was assessed by comparing blood glucose test results on 141 subjects with those obtained using a YSI Model 2300 Glucose Analyzer. Six results were obtained for each subject (each tested in duplicate with three test strip lots). The following results were obtained:

#### System Accuracy Results for Glucose Concentration <75 mg/dL

Within $\pm 5$ mg/dL	Within $\pm 10$ mg/dL	Within $\pm 15$ mg/dL*
111/162 (68.5%)	154/162 (95.1%)	<b>162/162 (100%)</b>

#### System Accuracy Results for Glucose Concentration $\geq 75$ mg/dL

Within $\pm 5\%$	Within $\pm 10\%$	Within $\pm 15\%$	Within $\pm 20\%^*$
282/684 (41.2%)	516/684 (75.4%)	639/684 (93.4%)	<b>680/684 (99.4%)</b>

\* ISO 15197 Minimum Acceptable Accuracy Requirements:

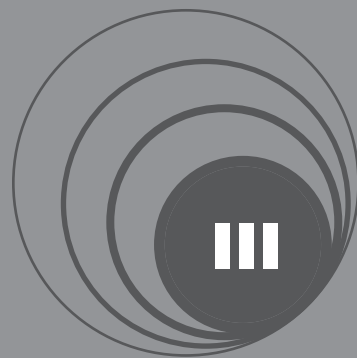
- 95% of individual glucose results must fall within  $\pm 15$  mg/dL of the YSI reference at glucose concentrations <75 mg/dL
- 95% of individual glucose results must fall within  $\pm 20\%$  of the YSI reference at glucose concentrations  $\geq 75$  mg/dL

#### Summary of Accuracy Results across the Glucose Range

Within $\pm 15$ mg/dL or $\pm 20\%$	842/846 (99.5%)
-------------------------------------	-----------------

**NOTE:** These results indicate that the blood glucose monitoring function of the OneTouch® Meter Remote meets the ISO 15197 requirements for accuracy.

## CHAPTER 11 - DETAILED INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR METER REMOTE AND TEST STRIPS



*OneTouch<sup>®</sup> Symphony<sup>™</sup> /  
Using your meter remote and pump together*





## CHAPTER 1 - OVERVIEW OF YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

Once you have been trained on your pump and meter remote, you are ready to learn how to use the devices together as a system. Using them together can provide you with options to help make insulin delivery more discreet and flexible.

When the devices are used together as a system, your meter remote will give you convenient remote access to certain pump functions, including calculating and delivering a bolus.

When using the devices together, your most recent BG test results from your meter remote are automatically entered into bolus calculations.

Before you begin using your devices together as a system, you must establish communication between your meter remote and pump. The procedure for establishing communication will be covered in the next chapter in *Section III*, pages 175–184.

### NOTE:

- You should review your pump and meter remote settings and make any desired changes before using the devices together as a system.
- When using your devices together as a system, you will sometimes need to access both devices. Examples of this are when you are establishing communication between your meter remote and pump, when RF communication is lost or deactivated, or when you need to resolve certain warnings, alarms or alerts.
- Your OneTouch® Meter Remote and Animas® Insulin Pump are designed to communicate via RF only with each other. They will not communicate with any other devices.

**⚠ WARNING:** You must complete the Animas® pump training before using your meter remote to access pump functions. During pump training, your health care professional will assist you in making the appropriate selections for your pump settings. Your pump settings directly impact dosing calculations when using your meter remote to deliver insulin from your pump. You are not able to modify pump settings from your meter remote. It is important to have pump settings programmed before using your meter remote to access pump functions.

## CHAPTER 1 - OVERVIEW OF YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

## CHAPTER 2 - ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN YOUR METER REMOTE AND YOUR PUMP

Establishing communication between your meter remote and pump requires that the RF feature is activated on both devices, and the devices are paired. Activating RF opens a line of communication on both devices, and pairing ensures communication will take place only between one meter remote and one pump. Once RF communication is activated and the devices are paired, communication will take place even when one or both displays have been turned off or have timed out automatically.

If you deactivate the RF feature on one or both devices, or if RF communication is lost, you will not be able to use your meter remote to access pump functions. This also means no data will be exchanged during that time. Once RF communication is re-established, you will be able to resume using your devices together as a system. Any new data generated since the last data transfer will be exchanged on the devices at that time.

### **NOTE:**

- The procedure for activating RF and pairing is done separately on each device.
- The RF feature on your meter remote will automatically be activated when you begin the pairing procedure on your meter remote.

## Pairing your meter remote and pump

You pair the devices by first activating RF communication and pairing on your pump, and then activating pairing on your meter remote. The RF channel on your pump will be automatically set to match the one on your meter remote.

If you want to separately activate or deactivate the RF feature on either your meter remote or pump, see *Reactivating/deactivating the RF feature on your meter remote*, pages 180–181 in this chapter, and *Reactivating/deactivating the RF feature on your pump*, page 182 in this chapter.

**NOTE: For the pairing to be successful, the pump must be awake (display on) and “searching” at the same time you select “Start Pairing” on your meter remote.** If either your pump or meter remote display times out before pairing is completed, you will need to repeat the steps to pair the devices. It is recommended that you keep your pump display on the SETUP ADV 10 screen and actively searching until you have activated pairing on your meter remote. You can keep the pump from timing out by pressing and releasing the contrast button on top of the pump every few seconds while the SETUP ADV 10 screen is displayed.

## CHAPTER 2 - ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN YOUR METER REMOTE AND YOUR PUMP

**Activate the RF feature on your pump**

- 1 Select “Setup” from the Main Menu screen on your pump display and press **OK**.
- 2 Select “Advanced” on the SETUP screen on your pump display and press **OK**.
- 3 With “Next” highlighted on your pump display, continue to press **OK** to scroll through the SETUP ADV screens until the SETUP ADV 10 screen is displayed.
- 4 Press **▲** on your pump until the “RF” field is highlighted. Press **OK** on your pump so that the highlight is flashing.
- 5 Press **▲** or **▼** on your pump to change “OFF” to “ON” and then press **OK**.

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	OFF
Search	----
Channel	Auto
<div>Home</div> <div>Next</div>	

*Pump Display*

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	ON
Search	----
Channel	Auto
<div>Home</div> <div>Next</div>	

*Pump Display***Activate the pairing feature on your pump**

- 1 With the “Search” field highlighted, press **OK** so that the highlight is flashing.
- 2 Press **▲** or **▼** on your pump to change “----” to “ON” and then press **OK**.

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	ON
Search	----
Channel	Auto
<div>Home</div> <div>Next</div>	

*Pump Display*

- 3 The pairing feature is activated when “[Searching]” appears on the display.
- 4 Continue with the steps below for activating the pairing feature on your meter remote. **Remember to keep the pump awake (display on) by pressing and releasing the contrast button on top of the pump.**

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	ON
Search	ON
Channel	Auto
[Searching]	
<div>Cancel</div> <div>Home</div> <div>Next</div>	

*Pump Display***Activate the pairing feature on your meter remote**

- 1 Select “Meter Settings” from the Main Menu screen on your meter remote display and press **OK**.
- 2 Highlight “RF” from the Meter Settings screen on your meter remote display and press **OK**.
- 3 Select “Pairing” from the RF Set-up screen on your meter remote display and press **OK**.
- 4 Check that your pump is awake (display on) and the SET UP ADV 10 screen on your pump display has the “RF” and “Search” fields set to “ON”, and “[Searching]” displayed.

Meter Settings
Basic
Customize
Lock Buttons
<b>RF</b>
Alerts

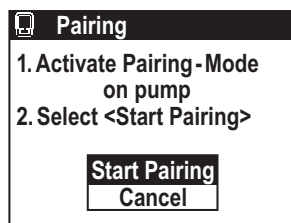
*Meter remote display*

RF Set-up
RF on/off
RF Channel
<b>Pairing</b>
RF Test

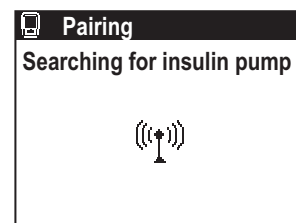
*Meter remote display*

## CHAPTER 2 - ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN YOUR METER REMOTE AND YOUR PUMP

**5** Highlight “Start Pairing” on the meter remote display and press **OK**. The meter remote will automatically search for a pump within RF range.



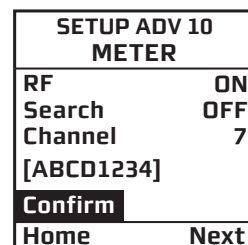
*Meter remote display*



*Meter remote display*

### Confirm pairing on your pump

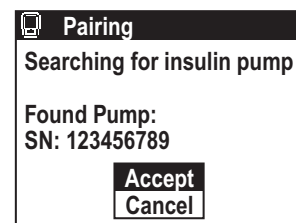
**1** Verify that the meter remote serial number displayed on your pump matches the one on the back of your meter remote. With “Confirm” highlighted and flashing on your pump display, press **OK** to confirm the pairing on your pump. “Next” will be highlighted on your pump display.



*Pump display*

### Accept pairing on your meter remote

**1** Verify that the pump serial number displayed on the meter remote matches the serial number on the back of your pump. Highlight “Accept” on your meter remote display and press **OK** to confirm the pairing on your meter remote. You will go directly to the Pump Home screen on your meter remote display (see Chapter 3 in *Section III*, pages 185-186).



*Meter remote display*

Whenever the devices are paired, the Pump Home screen will be the first screen displayed on your meter remote when you turn it on.

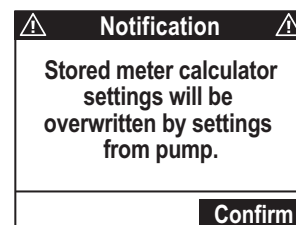
### NOTE:

- You must confirm pairing on your pump first, and then on your meter remote for pairing to be successful.
- If either your pump or meter remote display times out before the pairing is completed, you will need to repeat the steps to activate and confirm the pairing on both devices. **For the pairing to be successful, the pump must be awake (display on) and “Searching” at the same time you select “Start Pairing” on your meter remote.**
- To cancel pairing on your pump, press **▲** or **▼** on your pump while “Confirm” is highlighted and flashing on the SETUP ADV 10 screen on your pump display. “Confirm” will change to “Cancel”. Press **OK** on your pump to cancel the pairing on your pump. To cancel on your meter remote, highlight “Cancel” on the Pairing screen on your meter remote display. Press **OK** on your meter remote to cancel pairing on your meter remote.

**⚠ WARNING:** If the pump serial number displayed on your meter remote does not match the serial number on the back of your pump, turn the RF feature off on your meter remote and pump and call Customer Service at 999-999-9999 immediately.

## CHAPTER 2 - ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN YOUR METER REMOTE AND YOUR PUMP

After your devices are paired, the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens on your meter remote display will retrieve the bolus calculator values (settings) that are set and saved on your pump. **You will not have access to the Calculator Set-up option on your meter remote.** You will be reminded on your meter remote display that the bolus calculator settings from Calculator Set-up on your meter remote have been replaced.

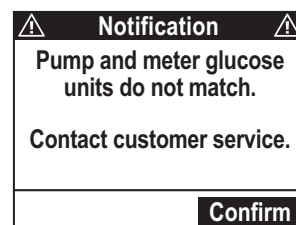


*Meter remote display*

Press **OK** on your meter remote to confirm the Notification. You will go to the Pump Home screen on your meter remote display (see *Chapter 3 in Section III*, pages 185–186).

**NOTE:** Your meter remote and pump must use the same unit of measure (mg/dL) for BG measurements or the devices cannot be paired. The BG unit of measure for both devices is set at the factory and cannot be changed.

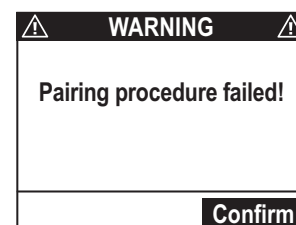
If the BG unit of measure is not the same on both devices, you will be notified on your meter remote display during the pairing procedure.



*Meter remote display*

Contact Customer Service at 999-999-9999 for instructions on replacing your meter remote or pump with one that has the correct glucose unit of measure.

This Notification screen will be followed by a Warning screen on your meter remote display indicating that the pairing procedure has failed. Press **OK** on your meter remote to confirm the Warning. You will not be able to use your meter remote to access pump functions unless both devices have the same glucose unit of measure (mg/dL).



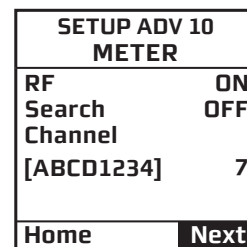
*Meter remote display*

## Performing a new pairing with a replacement meter remote or pump

If you obtain a replacement meter remote or pump, you will have to complete the pairing procedure again so that the new device is recognized. Any new pairing will automatically cancel the previous pairing.

### 1 Reactivate the pairing feature on your pump



Go to the SETUP ADV 10 screen on your pump. Press **▲** on your pump so that the "Search" field is highlighted on your pump display. Press **OK** on your pump so that the highlight is flashing. Press **▲** or **▼** on your pump to change "OFF" to "ON" and press **OK** to reactivate the pairing feature on your pump.




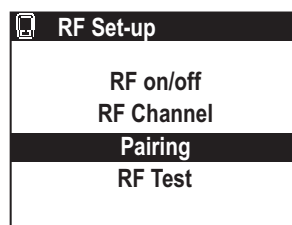
*Pump display*

## CHAPTER 2 - ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN YOUR METER REMOTE AND YOUR PUMP

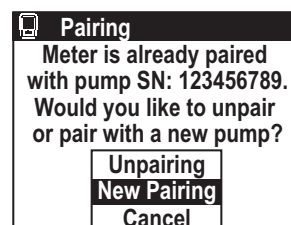
**2 Go to Pairing on your meter remote display**

Press  on your meter remote to highlight “Pairing” on the RF Set-up screen. Then press  on your meter remote.

Select “New Pairing” on the Pairing screen on your meter remote display and press . Then follow the same steps for confirming the pairing on your meter remote and pump (see *Pairing your meter remote and pump* earlier in this chapter, pages 175–178).





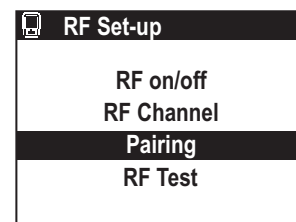
Meter remote display



Meter remote display


**Unpairing your meter remote and pump****1 Go to Pairing on your meter remote display**

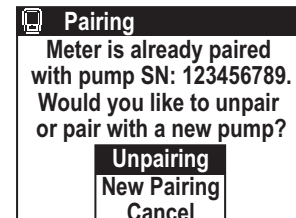
To unpair the two devices, first press  on your meter remote to highlight “Pairing” on the RF Set-up screen on your meter remote. Then press  on your meter remote.



Meter remote display

**2 Select Unpairing on your meter remote display**

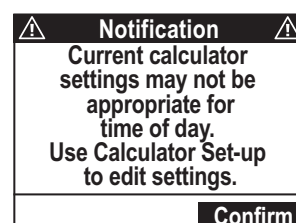
Select “Unpairing” from the Pairing screen on your meter remote display and press .



Meter remote display

**NOTE:** If you unpair your meter remote and pump, they will not be able to communicate and share data, and you will not be able to use your meter remote to access pump functions.

Because you unpaired the devices a Notification screen will appear on your meter remote display. The Notification screen will remind you that the current calculator settings last saved on your pump may not be appropriate for the current time of day. **It is important that you review these settings before using the ezCarb or ezBG feature on your meter remote to see that they still would apply.** You may always edit these settings by changing the settings in Calculator Set-up under the Meter Settings screen on your meter remote display, or directly on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens on your meter remote display.



Meter remote display

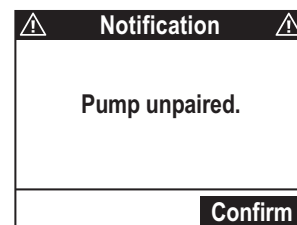


## CHAPTER 2 - ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN YOUR METER REMOTE AND YOUR PUMP

**3 Confirm the unpairing**

Press **OK** on your meter remote to confirm the Notification on your meter remote.

A second Notification screen will appear on your meter remote display to let you know that your meter remote and pump are now unpaired. Press **OK** on your meter remote display to confirm the Notification. You will go to the Meter Home screen on your meter remote display (see *Chapter 3 in Section III*, pages 185–186).



*Meter remote display*

**NOTE:** There is no separate unpairing procedure on your pump. Your pump remains ready to re-establish an RF link with the last paired meter remote, or to pair with a new meter remote.

**Reactivating/deactivating the RF feature on your meter remote**

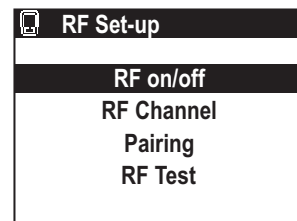
**NOTE:** The “RF on/off” menu option on the RF set-up screen on your meter remote is only available if your meter remote and pump are paired.

**Deactivating RF communication on your meter remote**

There are times when you might want or need to deactivate the RF feature on your meter remote. One situation is when you are on an airplane. Follow these instructions for deactivating the RF feature on your meter remote if it is activated.

**1 Go to RF on/off on your meter remote display**

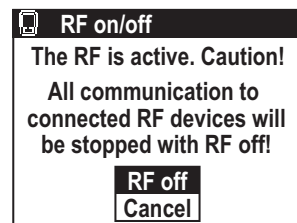
Highlight “RF on/off” on the RF Set-up screen on your meter remote display and then press **OK**.



*Meter remote display*

**2 Deactivate the RF feature on your meter remote**

You will be reminded on your meter remote display that the RF feature is activated. To deactivate the RF feature, highlight “RF off” on your meter remote display and press **OK**. All communication between your meter remote and pump will be stopped.

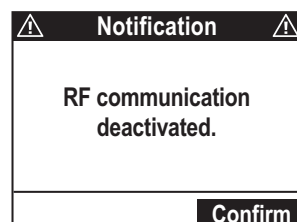


*Meter remote display*

**3 Wait for confirmation that the RF feature on your meter remote is deactivated**

A Notification screen will appear on your meter remote display to remind you that the RF feature is deactivated on your meter remote.

Press **OK** on your meter remote to confirm the Notification. You will go to the Meter Home screen on your meter remote display (see *Chapter 3 in Section III*, pages 185–186).




*Meter remote display*

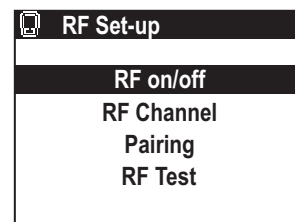
## CHAPTER 2 - ESTABLISHING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN YOUR METER REMOTE AND YOUR PUMP

**Reactivating RF communication on your meter remote**

Follow these instructions to reactivate the RF feature on your meter remote if it is deactivated.



**1 Go to RF on/off on your meter remote display**

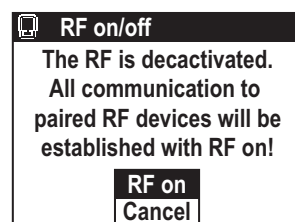
Highlight “RF on/off” on the RF Set-up screen on your meter remote and then press .



*Meter remote display*

**2 Reactivate the RF feature on your meter remote**


To reactivate RF communication, highlight “RF on” on your meter remote display and then press . To cancel, highlight “Cancel” on your meter remote display, and press  to return to the RF Set-up screen.

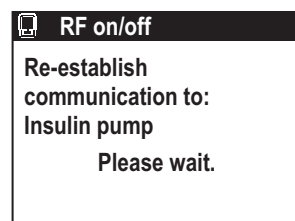


*Meter remote display*

**3 Wait for communication to be re-established between your meter remote and pump**

When communication is re-established, you will go to the Pump Home screen on your meter remote.

If your meter remote and pump are unable to re-establish communication, you will be notified on your meter remote. Press  on your meter remote to confirm the Notification. You will go to the Meter Home screen on your meter remote display (see *Chapter 3* in *Section III*, pages 185–186).



*Meter remote display*

## Reactivating/deactivating the RF feature on your pump

### Deactivating RF communication on your pump

There are times when you might want or need to deactivate the RF feature on your pump. One situation is when you are on an airplane. Follow these instructions to deactivate the RF feature on your pump if it is activated.

#### 1 Go to the SETUP ADV 10 screen on your pump

Select “Setup” from the Main Menu screen on your pump display and press . Then select “Advanced” on the SETUP screen on your pump display and press . With “Next” highlighted on your pump display, continue to press to scroll through the SETUP ADV screens until the SETUP ADV 10 screen is displayed.

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	ON
Search	OFF
Channel	7
[ABCD1234]	
Home	Next

*Pump display*

#### 2 Go to RF on your pump display

Press on your pump until the “RF” field is highlighted on your pump display. Then press on your pump so that the highlight is flashing. Press or on your pump to change “ON” to “OFF” and then press to deactivate the RF feature on your pump.

“Next” will be highlighted on your pump display. With “Home” highlighted, press on your pump to return to the Home screen on your pump display.

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	OFF
Search	----
Channel	Auto
Home	Next

*Pump display*

### Reactivating RF communication on your pump

The RF feature on your pump must be set to “ON” before you activate the pairing feature on your pump. Follow these instructions to activate the RF feature on your pump if it is deactivated.

#### 1 Go to the SETUP ADV 10 screen on your pump display

Select “Setup” from the Main Menu screen on your pump display and press . Then select “Advanced” on the SETUP screen on your pump display and press . With “Next” highlighted on your pump display, continue to press to scroll through the SETUP ADV screens until the SETUP ADV 10 screen is displayed.

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	OFF
Search	----
Channel	Auto
Home	Next

*Pump display*

#### 2 Go to RF on your pump display

Press on your pump until the “RF” field is highlighted on your pump display. Then press on your pump so that the highlight is flashing. Press or on your pump to change “OFF” to “ON” and then press to reactivate the RF feature on your pump.

“Next” will be highlighted on your pump display. With “Home” highlighted, press on your pump to return to the Home screen on your pump display.

SETUP ADV 10 METER	
RF	ON
Search	OFF
Channel	7
[ABCD1234]	
Home	Next

*Pump display*

## Troubleshooting RF communication between your meter remote and pump

Certain conditions may cause RF communication between your meter remote and pump to be lost or interrupted. One situation is when your devices are not within RF range of each other (about 10 feet). Another condition is dampness from wet clothing. If RF communication is lost, make sure your devices are within RF range and you have removed any wet clothing. If RF communication problems continue, you can use the RF test feature on your meter remote to help troubleshoot the problem.


The RF Test feature on your meter remote displays information about the RF connection between your meter remote and pump. In the event your meter remote indicates repeated communication errors, or you are having continuing difficulties in using your meter remote to access pump functions, contact Customer Service at 999-999-9999 and be prepared to follow the steps below.

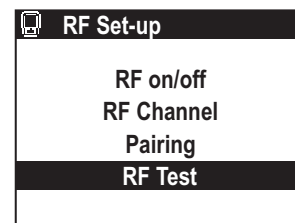
**NOTE:** The “RF Test” menu option on the RF set-up screen on your meter remote is only available if your meter remote and pump are paired.

### RF Test

If your meter remote and pump are paired, you may troubleshoot the RF connection by checking the RF channel, and the RF signal strength and quality.

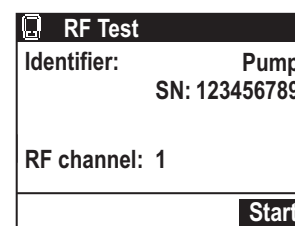
#### 1 Go to RF Test on your meter remote display

Highlight “RF Test” on the RF Set-up screen on your meter remote display. Then press  on your meter remote.



*Meter remote display*

If the devices are not paired, you will be notified on your meter remote display. If your meter remote and pump are paired, you will see the serial number of the paired pump on the RF Test screen on your meter remote display.




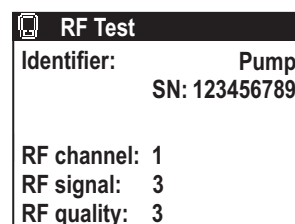
*Meter remote display*

#### 2 Start the RF Test from your meter remote

“Start” is highlighted. Press  on your meter remote to continue with the RF Test.

#### 3 Contact Customer Service for further instructions

Information about the RF channel, and RF signal strength and quality will appear on the display. Customer Service may use this information to help resolve problems with RF communication, including manually setting the RF channel on your meter remote and pump. Press  to return to the Main Menu screen.



*Meter remote display*

## Changing the RF channel on your meter and pump

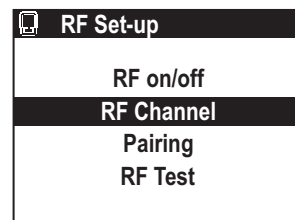
The RF channel on your meter remote must always match the RF channel on your pump. When you pair your meter remote and pump, the RF channel is automatically set to match on both devices. To avoid interference from another device or improve communication between your meter remote and pump, you can also manually change/set the RF channel on your meter remote and pump to match.

**NOTE:** The “RF Channel” menu option on the RF set-up screen on your meter remote is only available if your meter remote and pump are paired.


### Manually set the RF channel on your meter remote

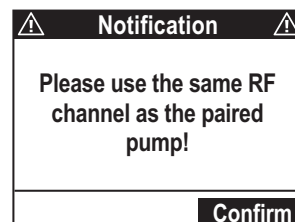
#### 1 Go to RF Channel on your meter remote display

Press  on your meter remote to highlight “RF Channel” on the RF Set-up screen. Then press  on your meter remote.





Meter remote display

A Notification screen will appear on your meter remote display to remind you to set the RF channel on your meter remote to match the one on your pump. Press  to confirm the Notification on your meter remote display.

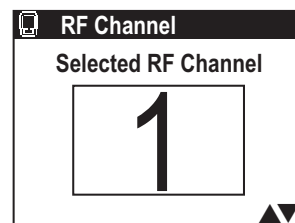


Meter remote display

#### 2 Set the RF Channel on your meter remote

Press  on your meter remote to manually select the desired channel. Then press  on your meter remote.



After making your selection, you will return to the RF Set-up screen on your meter remote display. You will then need to manually set the RF channel on your pump to match the channel you set on your meter remote.

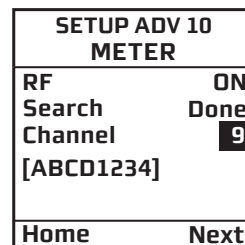


Meter remote display

### Manually set the RF channel on your pump




#### 1 Go to Channel on your pump display


Go to the SETUP ADV 10 screen on your pump display. Press  on your pump until the “Channel” field is highlighted. Then press  on your pump so that the highlight is flashing.

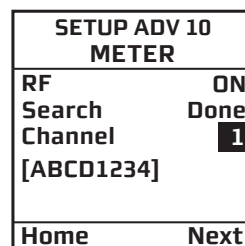


Pump display

#### 2 Set the RF Channel on your pump

Press  or  on your pump to change the current channel to match the RF channel you selected on your meter remote. Then press  on your pump.

“Next” will be highlighted on your pump display. With “Home” highlighted, press  on your pump to return to the Home screen on your pump display.



Pump display

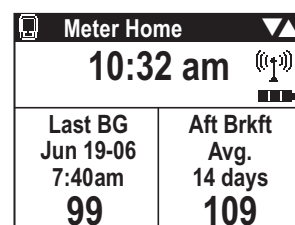
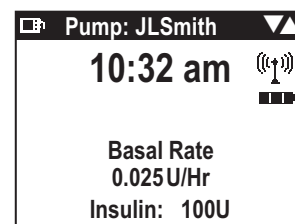
## CHAPTER 3 - PUMP HOME AND METER HOME SCREENS

**NOTE:** Unless otherwise specified, all references to screens and buttons apply to your meter remote from this chapter forward.

Once RF communication is activated on your meter remote and pump and the devices are paired, you are ready to begin using the devices together as a system. This means many of the pump functions will now be available on your meter remote. You will still need to access your pump directly for specific set-up and delivery functions, and to resolve certain pump warnings and alarms. In the event RF communication between the devices is lost, you can access all pump functions directly on the pump.

When your devices are paired, your meter remote provides two Home screens: a Pump Home screen and a Meter Home screen. From either of these Home screens, you can go to the Main Menu screen on your meter remote where you have access to all meter remote functions, including certain pump functions. The Main Menu screen on your meter remote display is the same Main Menu screen you had access to before the devices were paired.

**NOTE:** The Pump Home screen and Main Menu screen on your meter remote display are not the same as the Home screen and Main Menu screen on your pump display. Be sure you understand the differences between these screens before using the devices together as a system.



### Using your meter remote once your devices are paired

Turn your meter remote display on by pressing or on your meter remote.

After an all-black start-up screen appears on your meter remote display, an hourglass symbol will appear as your meter remote searches for a paired pump. This will be followed by the Pump Home screen. You can switch between the Pump Home screen and the Meter Home screen by pressing on your meter remote.

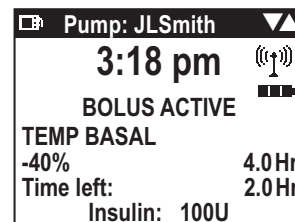
**NOTE:** If your meter remote is not currently paired with your pump, the Meter Home screen will appear instead of the Pump Home screen.

### Pump Home screen on your meter remote display

The Pump Home screen on your meter remote displays the current time of day stored in your pump, RF signal strength, the insulin units and battery power remaining in your pump, and other information about your current basal or bolus insulin delivery. The unique ID name/number of your pump will also appear at the top.

In this example Pump Home screen, “BOLUS ACTIVE” indicates that your pump is currently delivering an extended bolus dose. “TEMP BASAL” indicates that a temporary basal rate (a decrease of 40% in this example) was set for four hours, with two hours remaining.

From the Pump Home screen you can view the Meter Home screen or go to the Main Menu screen.



(Example)

To view the Meter Home screen, press . To go to the Main Menu screen, press .

## CHAPTER 3 - PUMP HOME AND METER HOME SCREENS

## Meter Home screen on your meter remote

The Meter Home screen displays the current time of day stored in your meter remote, RF signal strength, and battery power remaining in your meter remote. Your most recent BG test result appears along with the date and time of the test. Your average BG test results for the current meal period appears next to your most recent BG test result. Averages are based on the number of days you select when you set up your meter remote (see *Chapter 1* in *Section II*, pages 105–120).

Meter Home	
3:18 pm	
Last BG Jun 19-06 10:32am 109	Aft Lunch Avg. 14 days 105

To go back to the Pump Home screen, press . To go to the Main Menu screen, press .

**NOTE:** Once your devices are paired, the clock time on your meter remote will be automatically set to match the clock time on your pump.

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

### Calculating and delivering a bolus

You can use your meter remote to deliver any bolus type that is available with your pump. The procedures for delivering boluses from your meter remote are very similar to delivering boluses from your pump.

Your bolus options are:

- Normal
- ezCarb
- ezBG
- Combo Bolus

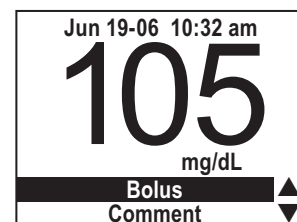
**⚠ WARNING:** Be sure to review all the values used in bolus calculations to make sure they are correct. You may always adjust the insulin units up or down before you decide to administer your bolus. If you dose an insulin amount that is too high or too low, this may result in a hypoglycemic or hyperglycemic event. Please discuss the bolus calculator feature and all relevant personal settings with your health care professional before using the calculator for the first time.

As long as RF communication is activated on your meter remote and pump, and the devices are paired, you may deliver a Normal Bolus using your meter remote. The other bolus types are available only if you enabled the Advanced Bolus features on your pump. **If insulin delivery is suspended on your pump, or if RF communication is lost or deactivated, you will not be able to use your meter remote as a remote control to deliver any type of bolus.**

**NOTE:** You can administer insulin directly from your pump under any situation where you are unable to do so using your meter remote (e.g., RF communication is lost or deactivated, or your meter remote and pump are out of RF range).

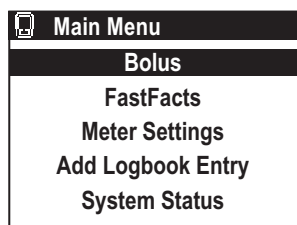
There are two ways to get to the Bolus Menu screen on your meter remote.

The first way is right after you take a BG test. When your result appears on the screen, “Bolus” will be highlighted. Press **OK** if you would like to go directly to the Bolus Menu screen. You may still add a comment to the test result after you deliver the bolus.

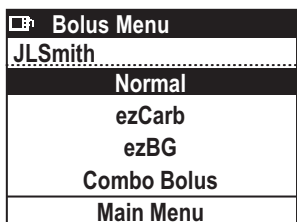




## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

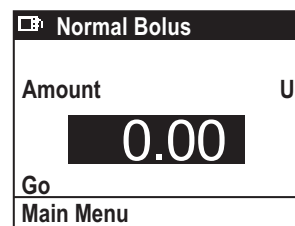


The second way is to press to highlight “Bolus” on the Main Menu screen and press .



In this example, all bolus options are available on the screen.

**NOTE:** If Advanced features are not enabled on your pump, selecting “Bolus” from the Main Menu screen takes you directly to the Normal Bolus screen.



## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

## Normal Bolus

**NOTE:** Bolus delivery speed can be adjusted in the Setup Advanced menu on your pump.

### 1 Select a Normal Bolus

Bolus Menu
JLSmith
Normal
ezCarb
ezBG
Combo Bolus
Main Menu

To deliver a Normal Bolus, press to highlight “Normal” on the Bolus Menu screen and press .

### 2 Choose the bolus amount

The “Amount” field is highlighted and flashing. Press to enter the bolus units and press .

Normal Bolus
Amount U
0.00
Go
Main Menu

Normal Bolus
Amount U
2.35
Go
Main Menu

Normal Bolus
Amount U
2.35
Go
Main Menu

### 3 Confirm you want to deliver the bolus

“Go” is now highlighted. Press to deliver the bolus or to return to the Bolus Menu screen.

When you press , “DELIVERING” will appear at the top of the screen and the units will count down to 0. After the bolus is delivered, you will return to the Pump Home screen, or to your BG test result if you began the bolus procedure from that screen.

Bolus
DELIVERING U
2.00
Press any function button to cancel

## Canceling a Normal Bolus

You may stop the undelivered bolus amount by pressing any button on the meter remote (or pump) while “DELIVERING” still appears at the top of the screen. After pressing any button, a Warning screen will appear that prompts you to confirm that you canceled bolus delivery. Insulin units that were delivered before the bolus was canceled appear at the bottom of the screen.

PUMP WARNING
Bolus delivery canceled by user button press.
Delivered: 2.00 U of 2.35 U
Confirm

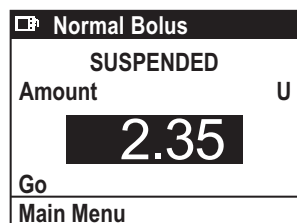
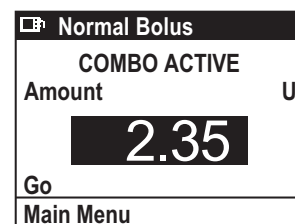
Press to confirm the Warning. You will return to the Pump Home screen, or to your BG test result if you began the bolus procedure from that screen. You may also press on your pump to confirm the Warning.

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

## Special messages during Normal Bolus Delivery

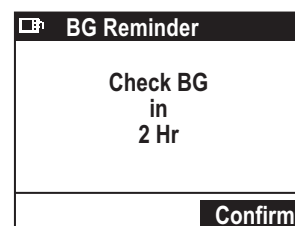
Certain messages may appear at the top of the Normal Bolus screen (or as separate screens) after you press **OK** to confirm the desired bolus units.

“COMBO ACTIVE” will appear if a Combo Bolus (see *Combo Bolus*, pages 196–197 in this chapter) is already in progress. This lets you know that you will be adding a Normal Bolus on top of an extended bolus.

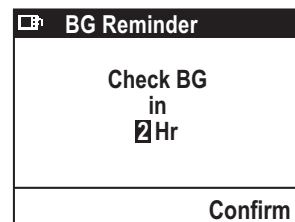


“SUSPENDED” will appear if you try to set and deliver a Normal Bolus while insulin delivery is suspended (see *Chapter 7* in *Section I*, pages 37–38). You cannot deliver a Normal Bolus until you resume insulin delivery from your pump.

If you set up your pump to remind you to test your BG, (see *Chapter 10*, pages 49–58, and *Chapter 11*, pages 59–72 in *Section I*) you will be prompted to confirm the reminder on the display after the bolus is delivered. This screen also lets you change when you will be reminded to check your BG. In this example, you will be reminded to check your BG two hours after you deliver the bolus. To confirm the reminder time on the screen, press **OK**.

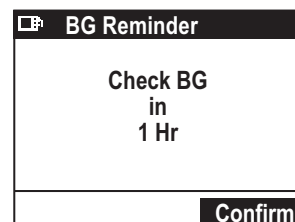


To select a different reminder time, first press **⏮** so that the “hrs” field is highlighted. Then press **OK** so the highlight is flashing.



Press **⏮** to select a reminder time of one to four hours, or “0” to turn the reminder feature off for this particular bolus. Press **OK** after you make your selection.

Press **OK** again to confirm the Check BG reminder time. You will return to the Pump Home screen, or to your BG test result if you began the bolus procedure from that screen.



**NOTE:** A Warning screen will appear if a bolus exceeds the limits that you set and saved on your pump. Press **OK** to confirm the Warning and follow the appropriate steps for adjusting the limits that are stored in your pump. You may also press **OK** on your pump to confirm the Warning.

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

### ezCarb Bolus

The ezCarb feature allows you to enter the number of carbs eaten, and then have your meter remote automatically calculate and deliver a bolus from your pump. The calculator is based on the I:C ratios that you have set and stored in your pump, and the number of carbs you plan to consume. Carb totals may be entered manually for the calculator, or may be selected from the Food Database stored in the meter remote.

You may also include a BG correction in your ezCarb bolus calculation. The BG correction is based on the ISF and BG Target you have set and stored in your pump, and your current BG test result.


If the IOB feature is enabled on your pump, your meter remote will calculate a reduced bolus amount if there is any IOB left from a previous bolus.

Be sure to discuss your personal I:C ratios, ISFs, BG Targets and IOB with your health care professional before you use the ezCarb feature.

#### 1 Select an ezCarb Bolus

**1a** To use the ezCarb feature, press  to highlight “ezCarb” on the Bolus Menu screen. Then press .

**1b** In anticipating that you might want to add a BG correction to your ezCarb Bolus, your meter remote will first check if the most recent BG test on your meter remote was taken within the last 15 minutes. If it was, you will go directly to the ezCarb Home screen below. Your most recent BG test result will appear in the “Actual” field on the BG Correct screen that is displayed if you decide to add a BG correction to your ezCarb Bolus (see step 4, *Add a BG correction*, pages 193–194).

If your most recent glucose test was taken more than 15 minutes ago, you will be notified on the display. You will be prompted to re-test or manually enter a new BG value if you are planning to add a BG correction to your ezCarb Bolus (see step 4, *Add a BG correction*, pages 193–194). Press  to confirm the Notification and go to the ezCarb Home screen below.

**1c** The ezCarb Home screen will appear. On the ezCarb Home screen, you can either manually enter carbs or automatically enter carbs from the Food Database. Carb entries made with the ezCarb feature on your meter remote are saved in your meter remote memory (see *Chapter 7 in Section II*, pages 149–158), and in your pump (see *Chapter 8 in Section I*, page 39). The maximum carbs that can be entered in the ezCarb Bolus calculations is 999 grams(g) – even if the selected and totaled amount from the Food Database is greater than that amount.

Bolus Menu
JLSmith
Normal
<b>ezCarb</b>
ezBG
Combo Bolus
Main Menu

Notification
Last BG more than 15 minutes old.
Retest or enter new BG.
Confirm

ezCarb Home
Carbs: 0g
I:C= 1U:15g
Food List
Review Total
Add BG
Show Result
Main Menu

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

**2 Enter a carb amount**

ezCarb Home
Carbs: 34g
I:C= 1U:15g
Food List
Review Total
Add BG
Show Result
Main Menu

To enter carbs manually, press to enter the number of carbs you have eaten and press . You will go to step 3 and “Add BG” will be highlighted.

To enter carbs from the Food Database, press while the “Carbs:” field has a value of 0 and is highlighted and flashing.

**NOTE:** Failure to use the Food Database Reference Guide to confirm your food selections could result in too much or too little insulin being calculated for your carb bolus.

“Food List” will be highlighted. Press to go to the Food Database where you can make your food selections with their corresponding carb amounts. Please see *Chapter 2 in Section II*, pages 121–122 for more information on the Food Database. When you are finished making food selections your total carbs will appear in the “Carbs:” field.

ezCarb Home
Carbs: 0g
I:C= 1U:15g
Food List
Review Total
Add BG
Show Result
Main Menu

**3 Review/change your carbs and/or I:C ratio**

“Add BG” will be highlighted.

Now you have the option to make changes to your carbs and/or I:C ratio, add a BG correction, or simply show the calculated carb bolus amount.

ezCarb Home
Carbs: 34g
I:C= 1U:15g
Food List
Review Total
Add BG
Show Result
Main Menu

**3a** To change your carbs manually, press to highlight the “Carbs:” field and press . With the highlight flashing, press to change the amount and press when finished. “Add BG” will be highlighted again.

ezCarb Home
Carbs: 34g
I:C= 1U:15g
Food List
Review Total
Add BG
Show Result
Main Menu

**3b** To review the carbs that you selected from the Food Database, press to highlight “Review Total” and press . You will go to the ezCarb Total screen on your meter remote display. When you are done changing, deleting or adding food items you will return to the ezCarb Home screen.

ezCarb Home
Carbs: 34g
I:C= 1U:15g
Food List
Review Total
Add BG
Show Result
Main Menu

**3c** To go directly to the Food Database where you can also change, delete, or add food items, press to highlight “Food List” and press . You will return to the ezCarb Home screen when you are finished selecting foods.

ezCarb Home
Carbs: 34g
I:C= 1U:15g
Food List
Review Total
Add BG
Show Result
Main Menu

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

ezCarb Home	
Carbs:	34g
I:C=	1U:15g
Food List	
Review Total	
Add BG	
Show Result	
Main Menu	

**3d** The I:C ratio that appears on the screen is the one that you stored in your pump for this time of the day. To change your I:C ratio, press to highlight the “I:C=” field and press . With the highlight flashing, press to change the I:C ratio and press when finished. “Add BG” will be highlighted again.

ezCarb Home	
Carbs:	34g
I:C=	1U:15g
Food List	
Review Total	
Add BG	
Show Result	
Main Menu	

**3e** To add a BG correction, continue with step 4.

**NOTE:** Changes made to your I:C ratio during ezCarb calculation apply to this bolus only and will not affect the I:C ratios you have stored in your pump.

#### 4 Add a BG correction

You have the option to add a BG correction to your ezCarb Bolus. Press with “Add BG” highlighted to do so. If you do not want to add a BG correction, press to highlight “Show Result” and press . This will bypass the BG correction step and take you to the Bolus Total screen in step 5.

**4a** In this example, the most recent BG test result on your meter remote (220 mg/dL) was taken within the last 15 minutes and that value appears in the “Actual” field. You may adjust the BG level up or down using . Press when finished.

BG Correct	
Actual	220 mg/dL
Target	-120 mg/dL
=	+100 mg/dL
IS Factor	37 mg/dL
Show Result	
Main Menu	






**NOTE:** If the most recent BG test result on your meter remote was taken more than 15 minutes ago, three dashes (“---”) will appear in the “Actual” field on the BG Correct screen. You have the option to manually enter a more recent BG test result or to re-test. Press to manually enter a new BG value, or insert a new test strip to re-test. If you decide to re-test, you will have to repeat the steps for starting an ezCarb Bolus when your BG test result appears on the display. When you return to the BG Correct screen and you have the desired BG value in the “Actual” field, press .

BG Correct	
Actual	--- mg/dL
Target	-120 mg/dL
=	--- mg/dL
IS Factor	37 mg/dL
Show Result	
Main Menu	




**4b** “Show Result” is highlighted. Values appear on the screen for your “Target” and your “IS Factor”. Target refers to the BG Target level that you stored in your pump. IS Factor is the ISF that you stored in your pump.

BG Correct	
Actual	220 mg/dL
Target	-120 mg/dL
=	+100 mg/dL
IS Factor	37 mg/dL
Show Result	
Main Menu	


## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE




**4c** If all your entries are correct, press  with “Show Result” highlighted on the BG Correct screen. If you need to adjust any entry, press  to first highlight it, and then press . Use  to make the change and then press  again.

**NOTE:** Changes made to your IS Factor or BG Target during ezCarb calculations apply to this bolus only and will not affect the IS Factor or BG Target you have stored in your pump.

 <b>Pump Alert</b> 
<b>LOW BG</b> Treat low BG. No bolus recommended. Monitor BG.



Before calculating an estimated BG correction, your meter remote will first check to see if your Actual BG is within the range 70-250 mg/dL. If your Actual BG falls below 70 mg/dL or above 250 mg/dL, you will be prompted with either a LOW BG or HIGH BG Pump Alert screen.


Press  on your meter remote or pump to confirm the Alert. Treat a LOW BG or HIGH BG immediately according to your health care professional's recommendation.

 <b>Pump Alert</b> 
<b>HIGH BG</b> Treat high BG. Check site. Check ketones. Monitor BG.




## 5 Review and deliver your ezCarb Bolus

The Bolus Total screen shows the Carb and BG correction amounts calculated from your previous entries. If the IOB feature is enabled on your pump, the suggested total bolus amount will be adjusted accordingly. “Total” units are rounded to the nearest .05 units. The amount field will be highlighted and flashing, and will display 0.00 units.


 <b>Bolus Total</b>	
Carb	2.25U
BG	+ 2.70U
IOB	--.--U
Total	= 4.95U
Go	<b>0.00</b> U
Type	Normal
Main Menu	

 <b>Bolus Total</b>	
Carb	2.25U
BG	+ 2.70U
IOB	--.--U
Total	= 4.95U
Go	<b>4.95</b> U
Type	Normal
Main Menu	


**NOTE:** If you have not enabled the IOB feature on your pump, a set of dashes (“--.--”) will appear as the IOB amount.





**5a** Press  to enter either the suggested “Total” units or a different bolus amount. Press  once you have selected the desired bolus amount.


**5b** “Go” is highlighted. You can deliver the ezCarb Bolus either as a Normal Bolus or as a Combo Bolus by making your selection in the “Type” field. The pre-set delivery type for an ezCarb Bolus is Normal.

 <b>Bolus Total</b>	
Carb	2.25U
BG	+ 2.70U
IOB	--.--U
Total	= 4.95U
Go	<b>4.95</b> U
Type	Normal
Main Menu	

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE


**5c** To deliver your ezCarb Bolus as a Normal Bolus, make sure “Normal” appears in the “Type” field. With “Go” highlighted, press . This will begin delivery of the units as a Normal Bolus.

**5d** To deliver an ezCarb Bolus as a Combo Bolus, first press  to highlight the “Type” field. Then press  so that the highlight over “Normal” is flashing. Press  so that “Combo” appears on the screen and is highlighted. Press  to continue.

 Bolus Total		
Carb		2.25U
BG	+	2.70U
IOB		--.--U
Total	=	4.95U
Go		4.95 U
Type	Normal	
Main Menu		

Bolus Total		
Carb		2.25U
BG	+	2.70U
IOB		--.--U
Total	=	4.95U
Go		4.95 U
Type	Combo	
Main Menu		

Bolus Total		
Carb		2.25U
BG	+	2.70U
IOB		--.--U
Total	=	4.95U
Go		4.95 U
Type Combo		
Main Menu		

“Go” is highlighted again. Press  to begin the steps for delivering the ezCarb units as a Combo Bolus (see *Combo Bolus*, pages 196-197 in this chapter). The bolus amount you entered in the Bolus Total screen in step 5 will appear in the “Total” field on the first Combo Bolus screen.



## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

## Combo Bolus

A Combo Bolus is used to deliver both a Normal and an Extended Bolus. See *Chapter 11* in *Section I*, pages 59–72 for information on Combo Boluses.

### 1 Select a Combo Bolus

On the Bolus Menu screen, press  to highlight “Combo Bolus” and press .



Bolus Menu	
JLSmith	
Normal	
ezCarb	
ezBG	
Combo Bolus	
Main Menu	

If you used the ezCarb Bolus option to calculate a bolus and chose to deliver it as a Combo Bolus, you will begin at the Combo Bolus screen in step 2.



### 2 Review/change your bolus amount, duration, and/or split percentages

Total Combo Bolus units will be highlighted in the “Total” field. Your starting point will be “0.00” units if you are initiating the Combo Bolus from the Bolus Menu screen.

Combo Bolus	
Total	8.50U
Duration	0.5Hr
Norm:Ext	0 : 100%
	0.00 : 8.50U
Go	
Main Menu	

**2a** Press  to adjust the amount and press  when finished.

Combo Bolus	
Total	0.00U
Duration	0.5Hr
Norm:Ext	0 : 100%
	0.00 : 0.00U
Go	
Main Menu	

**NOTE:** You may not start a new Combo Bolus if another one is active. If a Combo Bolus is active, “ACTIVE” will appear on the top of the screen and the duration and units delivered so far will appear below. To cancel the current active Combo Bolus, press  to highlight “CANCEL” and press . Any remaining insulin from the current active Combo Bolus will be canceled. You will return to the Pump Home screen.






Combo Bolus ACTIVE	
Duration	0.0 : 4.0 Hrs
Delivered	0.60 U : 2.00 U
CANCEL	
Main Menu	




**2b** “Go” is highlighted. Values appear on the screen for “Duration” and “Norm:Ext”. “Duration” is the amount of time you would like to extend the bolus. “Norm:Ext” refers to how you want to split your total bolus into normal (Norm) and extended (Ext) units. Splits are represented as percentages that total 100%.


Combo Bolus	
Total	8.50U
Duration	0.5 Hr
Norm:Ext	30 : 70%
	2.55 : 5.95U
Go	
Main Menu	

The duration time displayed is the duration time of your last Combo Bolus. Likewise, the splits displayed are the splits of your last Combo Bolus. If you are using the Combo Bolus feature for the first time, the displayed values will be the pre-set values stored in your pump (30 minutes duration, 0% and 100% for normal and extended units).

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

**2c** If all your entries are correct, press  with “Go” highlighted. If you need to adjust any entry, press  to highlight it, and then press . Use  to make the change and press  again. “Go” will be highlighted after each change is made.

For example, to change your split, highlight the “Norm:Ext” field and press . Press  to enter the desired split percentages. As you scroll, normal (Norm) and extended (Ext) units appear on the screen below the percentages (%s). When you are finished, press  again.

You can use the same steps to go back and change the duration time. Press  when finished.

Combo Bolus	
Total	8.50U
Duration	0.5Hr
Norm:Ext	30 : 70%
	2.55 : 5.95U
Go	
Main Menu	

### 3 Start delivery of the Combo Bolus

With “Go” highlighted, press  to begin delivering the bolus.

Combo Bolus	
Total	8.50U
Duration	0.5 Hr
Norm:Ext	30 : 70%
	2.55 : 5.95U
Go	
Main Menu	

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

## ezBG Bolus

ezBG Bolus lets you calculate and deliver a BG correction bolus. The steps for ezBG Boluses are the same as for adding a BG correction bolus under the ezCarb feature. All ezBG Boluses are delivered as Normal boluses.

Bolus Menu
JLSmith
Normal
ezCarb
<b>ezBG</b>
Combo Bolus
Main Menu

**1 Select an ezBG Bolus**

**1a** Press to highlight “ezBG” on the Bolus Menu screen and press .

**1b** Your meter remote will first check if the most recent BG test on your meter remote was taken within the last 15 minutes. If it was, you will go to the ezBG screen in step 2. Your most recent BG test result will appear in the “Actual” field on the ezBG screen.

If your last BG test was taken more than 15 minutes ago, you will be notified on the display. You will be prompted to re-test or manually enter a new BG value. Press to confirm the Notification and go to the ezBG screen in step 2.

Notification
Last BG more than 15 minutes old.
Retest or enter new BG.
<b>Confirm</b>

**2 Review/change your BG value**

In this example, the most recent BG test result on your meter remote (224mg/dL) was taken within the last 15 minutes. You may adjust the level up or down using . Press when finished so that “Show Result” is highlighted.

ezBG	
Actual	224mg/dL
Target	-120mg/dL
=	+104 mg/dL
IS Factor	37 mg/dL
Show Result	
Main Menu	

**NOTE:** If the most recent BG test result on your meter remote was taken more than 15 minutes ago, three dashes (“---”) will appear in the “Actual” field on the ezBG screen. You have the option to manually enter a new BG value or to re-test. Press to manually enter a more recent BG test result, or insert a new test strip to re-test. If you decide to re-test, you will have to repeat the steps for starting a new BG Bolus when your BG test result appears on the display. When you return to the ezBG screen and you have the desired BG value in the “Actual” field, press .

ezBG	
Actual	---mg/dL
Target	-120mg/dL
=	--- mg/dL
IS Factor	37 mg/dL
Show Result	
Main Menu	

**3 Review/change your BG Target and/or IS Factor as needed**

Values appear on the screen for your “Target” and your “IS Factor”. Target refers to the BG target that you stored in your pump. Your IS Factor is the ISF that you stored in your pump.

If all your entries are correct, press with “Show Result” highlighted. If you need to adjust any entry, press to highlight it, and then press . Use to make the change and press again.

ezBG	
Actual	224mg/dL
Target	-120mg/dL
=	+104mg/dL
IS Factor	37 mg/dL
Show Result	
Main Menu	

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

Use the same steps to go back and change your glucose target or your Actual BG. When all changes have been made and “Show Result” is highlighted, press **OK** to go to the ezBG Total screen in step 4.

**NOTE:** Changes made to your IS Factor or BG Target during ezBG calculations apply to this bolus only and will not affect the IS Factor or BG Target you have stored in your pump.

### 4 Review and deliver your ezBG bolus

The ezBG Total screen shows the calculated BG correction amount from your ezBG screen entries. If the IOB feature is enabled on your pump, the suggested total bolus amount will be adjusted accordingly. “Total” units are rounded to the nearest .05 units. The amount field will be highlighted and flashing, and will display 0.00 units.

ezBG Total		
BG	+	2.80U
IOB		--.--U
Total	=	2.80U
Go		<b>0.00u</b>
Main Menu		

**NOTE:** If you have not enabled the IOB feature on your pump, “--.--” is shown as the IOB amount.

Press **OK** to enter the calculated “Total” units from above or a different bolus amount. Press **OK** once you have entered the desired bolus amount.

ezBG Total		
BG	+	2.80U
IOB		--.--U
Total	=	2.80U
Go		<b>2.80u</b>
Main Menu		

“Go” is highlighted. Press **OK** to deliver the bolus.

ezBG Total		
BG	+	2.80U
IOB		--.--U
Total	=	2.80U
Go		<b>2.80u</b>
Main Menu		

**⚠ WARNING:** If RF communication is lost during the delivery of a Normal Bolus or the normal portion of a Combo Bolus, the bolus will be discontinued. Any remaining normal bolus units will not be delivered. Delivery of the extended portion of a Combo Bolus continues even if RF communication is lost or interrupted.

- A Warning screen will appear on your meter remote display to remind you that the bolus was discontinued. A similar Warning screen will appear on your pump display, and will indicate the number of insulin units delivered before the bolus was discontinued.
- You must confirm the Warning on either your meter remote or pump to continue.

WARNING		
Bolus canceled. Move devices closer, or change channel. Delivered: see pump		
		Confirm

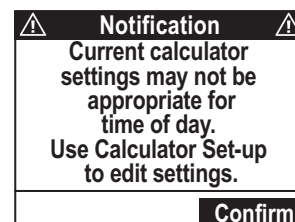
## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

## Using the ezCarb and ezBG calculator feature when your devices are not paired

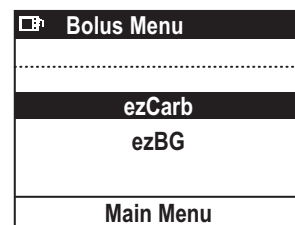
When you use the bolus calculator feature, your meter remote gets important information from your pump. If your meter remote is not currently paired with your pump, the meter remote cannot get that data.

There may be times when the two devices are not paired but you would still like to use the calculator feature on your meter remote. An example might be when you want to give yourself a bolus from a pen or syringe. You will still be able to use the ezCarb or ezBG calculator feature on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens.

In cases where your devices are not paired and you access the Bolus Menu on your meter remote, a Notification screen will appear on your meter remote display. It will remind you that the bolus calculator values last set and saved on your pump may not be appropriate for the current time of day.



If the devices are not paired, the Bolus Menu screen will only include the ezCarb and ezBG options. The steps for calculating a bolus will be the same as when the devices are paired. The ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens will use the bolus calculator settings last set and saved on your pump prior to the unpairing. You may edit the bolus calculator settings using the Calculator Set-up feature on your meter remote or directly on the ezCarb or ezBG screens.



☰ Bolus Total		
BG	+	0.25U
IOB		---.---U
Total	=	1.45U
Done		
Main Menu		

(Example ezBG screen when your meter remote and pump are not paired.)

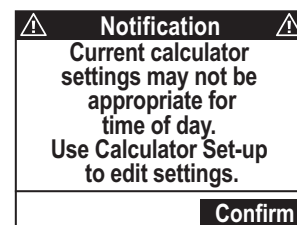
Note that the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens will be similar to the display screens when your meter remote and pump are paired, with a few exceptions:

- 1 The IOB amount will appear as “---.---” to indicate that the IOB stored in your pump is not available for use in the calculation.
- 2 “Go” is replaced by “Done” to indicate that you are calculating a bolus but will not be using your meter remote to deliver it from your pump.

See *Chapter 1* in *Section II*, pages 105–120 for a complete explanation of settings from Calculator Set-up and how they are used on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens.

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

Unless you re-set/save the calculator settings on your meter remote using the Calculator Set-up screen, a Notification screen will appear every time you use the ezCarb or ezBG calculator feature while the devices are unpaired. This is to remind you that the current bolus calculator settings last set and saved on your pump may not be appropriate for the current time of day.



**It is important that you review these settings before using the ezCarb or ezBG feature on your meter remote to see that they still would apply.** You may always edit these settings by changing the settings in Calculator Set-up under the Meter Settings screen on your meter remote display, or directly on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens on your meter remote display.

Press  to confirm the Notification.

## CHAPTER 4 - INSULIN DELIVERY FUNCTIONS ON YOUR METER REMOTE

## CHAPTER 5 - CHECKING THE STATUS OF YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

You may review the status of various pump functions and features directly on your meter remote display. You may also verify your meter remote serial number and software version number. Your meter remote and pump must be paired, and RF activated, in order to access pump status screens on your meter remote display.

Press to highlight “System Status” on the Main Menu screen and press .

Main Menu
Bolus
FastFacts
Meter Settings
Add Logbook Entry
<b>System Status</b>

### Checking Pump Status

With “Pump Status” highlighted, press to access a series of screens with information about your insulin delivery.

System Status
<b>Pump Status</b>
Meter Status

Six status screens are available. They are labeled 1 through 6 on the top right of the screen. Basal and bolus data appear in the first five screens. Your pump serial number and pump software version number appear on the final screen. Press to scroll from one status screen to the next, and press twice to highlight and then return to the Main Menu screen.

### Status Screen 1- Active Basal

The first status screen shows which basal program is currently active, the 24-hour total for the active basal program, units per hour for the current time segment, and insulin remaining in your pump. The (status screen) number “1” will be flashing on the top right of the screen. This indicates that you are in review mode and can scroll up or down to view other status screens.

Status	1
Active Basal	
A1-WEEKDAY	
24-Hr Total	13.60 U
0.675 U/Hr	
Insulin 100U	
Main Menu	

Flashing Number

To continue scrolling through the status screens, press while the number “1” is highlighted and flashing. This will take you to the next status screen.

To return to the Main Menu screen, press so that “Main Menu” is highlighted. Press again to return to the Main Menu screen.

Status	1
Active Basal	
A1-WEEKDAY	
24-Hr Total	13.60 U
0.675 U/Hr	
Insulin 100U	
Main Menu	

Flashing Number



**CHAPTER 5 - CHECKING THE STATUS OF YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM****Status Screen 2 - IOB, Last Bolus**

The second status screen displays the current IOB amount, even if the IOB feature on your pump is disabled. This screen also shows the type (“N” = Normal, “C” = Combo [normal portion only], “A” = Audio), amount, time and date of your last completed bolus. See *Chapter 5* pages 27–28, and *Chapter 11* pages 59–72, in *Section I* for an explanation of bolus types.

Status	2
IOB= 00U	
Last Bolus	
N	3.30U
	8:35 am
	Jun 19-06
Main Menu	

**Status Screen 3 - Delivery Today**

Total bolus and basal amounts delivered for the current day (from midnight to the current time) appear on the third status screen. Any Temp Basal amounts are included in the total. The screen will indicate if a Temp Basal had been set (“Yes” or “No”) or if insulin delivery had been suspended (“Yes” or “No”).

Status	3
Delivery Today U100	
Temp	No
Suspend	No
Bolus	9.400U
Basal	0.200U
Total	9.600U
Main Menu	

**Status Screen 4 - Combo Bolus**

The date, time period (start and end time), and total units of your last Combo Bolus will appear on the next screen. “COMPLETED” will appear to indicate the entire bolus was delivered. “ACTIVE” will appear if bolus delivery is still in progress. “CANCELED” will appear if you used your meter remote or pump to cancel the bolus.

Status	4
Combo Bolus	
COMPLETED	
	Jun 19-06
Start time	12:00 pm
End time	2:00 pm
Delivered	8.50 / 8.50U
Main Menu	

**Status Screen 5 - Temp Basal**

The fifth status screen indicates the date, time period (start and end time) of your last Temp Basal, and the percentage increase or decrease in units from the basal program that was in effect at the time.

Status	5
Temp Basal	
ACTIVE	
	Jun 19-06
Start	4:00 pm
End	6:00 pm
Change	-50%
Main Menu	



**Status Screen 6 - Codes**


The pump software version number and the last seven digits of your pump serial number appear on the sixth (last) status screen.


Status	6
Codes	
REV M= XXX.XX.XX	
S/N# 76543-21	
Main Menu	

## CHAPTER 5 - CHECKING THE STATUS OF YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

## Checking Meter Remote Status

To check your meter remote serial number and the current version of the software loaded inside your meter remote, press  to highlight “Meter Status” and then press .

 System Status
Pump Status
<b>Meter Status</b>

 Meter Status	
S/N:	87654321
SW Version:	V01.00

Your meter remote serial number and current meter remote software version number will appear on the screen.









## CHAPTER 5 - CHECKING THE STATUS OF YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM













Once you activate RF communication and pair the devices, your meter remote will display additional special messages. These include messages regarding communication problems between the devices or if your intended actions might require additional attention.

**IMPORTANT:** If a message is displayed on your meter remote and is not included in the list that follows, it may be due to an error specific to your meter remote (see *Chapter 10 in Section II*, pages 167–170) or a pump related message that appears on both your pump and meter remote displays (see the list of pump related messages that follows in this chapter, pages 212–216).













### System error messages on your meter remote

INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
 <b>WARNING</b>  <b>Error 8</b> System error. Call Customer Service.	Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999 for more information.
 <b>WARNING</b>  Pairing procedure canceled! <div>Confirm</div>	Press  to confirm the Warning. If you would like to pair your meter remote with the same pump or another pump, repeat the pairing procedure.
 <b>WARNING</b>  Pairing procedure failed! <div>Confirm</div>	Press  to confirm the Warning. Activate the pairing mode on your pump (see pages 175–178) and make sure it is within RF range (approximately 10 feet) of your meter remote. Repeat the steps for pairing your meter remote with your pump.

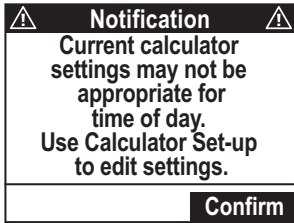

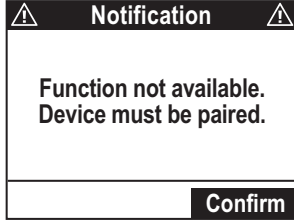

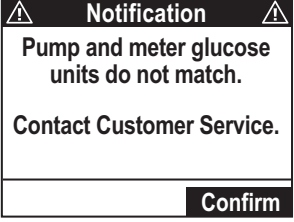

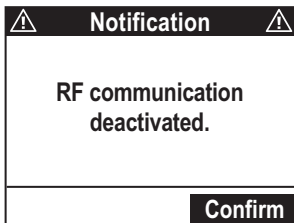

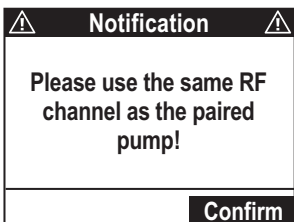

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div>  <b>WARNING</b>             Bolus canceled.            Move devices            closer, or            change channel.            Delivered: see pump  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>Bolus was canceled because RF communication was lost during bolus delivery, and has not been re-established.</p> <p>Press  to confirm the Warning. Make sure your meter remote and pump are within RF range, and/or try troubleshooting the RF connection with Customer Service at 999-999-9999 using the RF Test feature on your meter remote. Please refer to your pump to see how many insulin units were delivered before the bolus was canceled. You will still be able to deliver insulin directly from your pump or as an insulin injection.</p>
<div>  <b>Notification</b>             Last BG more than 15            minutes old.            Retest or enter            new BG.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>The last BG test taken on your meter remote was more than 15 minutes ago, and may not be current enough for calculating a BG correction.</p> <p>Press  to confirm the Notification. You will be prompted to re-test or manually enter a more recent BG test result.</p>
<div>  <b>Notification</b>             No communication.            Pump is busy.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>There is no communication between your meter remote and pump because your pump is in the middle of a procedure.</p> <p>Your pump must complete the procedure before it can respond to your meter remote command. Press  to confirm the Notification. Wait a few seconds for your pump to complete the procedure. If the message appears again, check the RF status.</p>
<div>  <b>Notification</b>             Pump unpaired.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>Your meter remote and pump are no longer paired, and will not be able to communicate or share data. You will not be able to use your meter remote to deliver insulin from your pump while the devices are unpaired.</p> <p>Press  to confirm the Notification. To re-pair your meter remote with your pump, or to pair your meter remote with a new pump, complete the pairing procedure (see pages 178–179). In cases where you are not able to use your meter remote to access pump functions, you will still be able to deliver insulin directly from your pump or as an insulin injection.</p>

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div>  <b>Notification</b>             Unable to communicate with pump!  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>Your meter remote and pump are unable to communicate. Possible causes are that the devices are not within RF range or there is RF interference. You will not be able to use your meter remote to deliver insulin from your pump when the devices are unable to communicate.</p> <p>Press  to confirm the Notification. See if your meter remote and pump are within RF range (about 10 feet of one another), and use the RF Test feature on your meter remote to check the strength and quality of the RF signal (see pages 183–184). In cases where you are not able to use your meter remote to access pump functions, you will still be able to deliver insulin directly from your pump or as an insulin injection.</p>
<div>  <b>Notification</b>             Function not available. All communication to connected RF devices is stopped!  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>Your meter remote and pump are unable to communicate. A possible cause is that RF communication has been deactivated.</p> <p>Press  to confirm the Notification. Check to see if you have deactivated RF communication on either your meter remote or pump (see pages 180–182). In cases where you are not able to use your meter remote to access pump functions, you will still be able to deliver insulin directly from your pump or as an insulin injection.</p>
<div>  <b>Notification</b>             Unable to communicate with pump!            Bolus settings may not be current.            Verify &amp; edit bolus settings as needed.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>You have accessed the bolus calculator on either the ezCarb or ezBG Bolus screens, but your meter remote and pump are unable to communicate. The ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens will use the bolus calculator values last set and saved on your pump.</p> <p>The values last set and saved on your pump may not be appropriate for this time of day. Press  to confirm the Notification. You may edit the values as necessary in Calculator Set-up under the Meter Settings screen if your meter remote and pump are unpaired. You may also edit the values directly on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens.</p>
<div>  <b>Notification</b>             Stored meter calculator settings will be overwritten by settings from pump.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<p>Your meter remote and pump are now paired, and the bolus calculator settings from Calculator Set-up will be replaced by those last set and saved on your pump.</p> <p>Press  to confirm the Notification. You may edit the settings on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens.</p>

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
 <p>You have chosen to unpair your meter remote and pump. The current calculator settings last saved may not be appropriate for the current time of day.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Notification. <b>It is important that you review these settings before using the ezCarb or ezBG feature on your meter remote to see that they still would apply.</b> You may edit the settings in Calculator Set-up under the Meter Settings screen if your meter remote and pump are unpaired. You may also edit the settings directly on the ezCarb and ezBG Bolus screens.</p>
 <p>You have tried to initiate a pump function, but your meter remote and pump are not currently paired.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Notification. Complete the pairing procedure on your meter remote and pump.</p>
 <p>The glucose unit of measure on your meter remote does not match the glucose unit of measure on your pump. They must match for the pairing procedure to be successful.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Notification. Call Customer Service immediately at 999-999-9999.</p>
 <p>You have deactivated RF communication between your meter remote and pump.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Notification.</p>
 <p>The RF channel on your meter remote and pump must be set to match for the devices to communicate.</p>	<p>Press  to confirm the Notification. If you are manually setting the RF Channel on your meter remote, make sure it matches the RF channel on your pump (see page 184).</p>

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

There are a series of pump alarms, warnings, and alerts that display and/or sound both on your meter remote and pump. It is possible that pump warnings, alarms, or alerts may sound and display first on your pump before doing so on your meter remote. **Pump alarms, warnings, and alerts require you to confirm the message on either your meter remote or pump, and then take appropriate action on your pump to address the problem.** Some pump alarms also provide an option to suspend insulin delivery.

Your pump has a progressive warnings and alarms safety system. This means that if you do not confirm the warning or alarm, your pump will begin to beep louder and start to vibrate within one hour. At that time, if you do not confirm the warning or alarm, it will continue until the necessary action is taken.

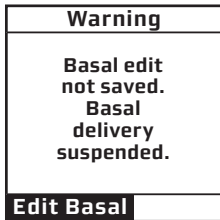
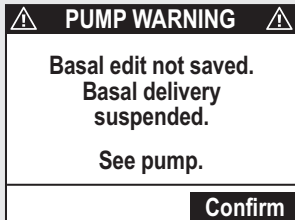
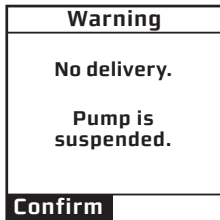
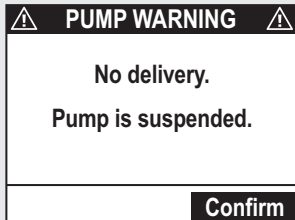
**NOTE:** Your pump uses battery power to notify you of alerts, warnings, and alarms. If you do not confirm the notification, your pump will continue to use battery power as the notifications repeat and progress. This will result in reduced battery life and the Replace Battery Alarm screen appearing sooner than expected.

Additionally, certain warnings (e.g., Low Cartridge Warning, Occlusion Alarm) take precedence over less critical ones (e.g., Low Battery Warning). This means if you do not confirm the more critical warning, battery life will be reduced and your pump may skip the Low Battery Warning and go directly to the Replace Battery Alarm, or battery life will end before a Replace Battery Alarm is displayed.

**IMPORTANT:** If a message is displayed on your meter remote and is not included in the list that follows, it may be due to an error specific to your meter remote (see *Chapter 10 in Section II*, pages 167–170), or a communication error between the devices (see the list of communication-related messages in this chapter, pages 207–210).









### Pump alarms, warnings, and alerts that display on both devices

**NOTE:** When pump alarms, warnings, and alerts display on both devices, there are slight differences in how the messages appear on your meter remote and pump displays. Where applicable, alarms, warnings, and alerts will display actual insulin units during pump operation, rather than the “XX” or “XXX” units displayed on some of the screens in this list.





















PUMP DISPLAY	METER REMOTE DISPLAY	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
		The basal program edit was not saved on your pump. Basal delivery is currently stopped.	Press <b>OK</b> on your meter remote or <b>OK</b> on your pump to confirm the Warning. If you press <b>OK</b> on your pump, you will go to the Edit Basal screen where you can review and save your basal program edits.
		You manually suspended insulin delivery on your pump. All insulin delivery is stopped.	Press <b>OK</b> on your meter remote or <b>OK</b> on your pump to confirm the Warning. Follow steps for resuming insulin delivery using your pump.







## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

PUMP DISPLAY	METER REMOTE DISPLAY	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div>Warning</div> <div>Low battery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div>⚠ PUMP WARNING ⚠</div> <div>Low pump battery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	Your pump battery is very low and will only last a minimum of thirty minutes.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. Replace your pump battery as soon as possible.
<div>Warning</div> <div>Exceeds max bolus XX.XX U.</div> <div>No bolus delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div>⚠ PUMP WARNING ⚠</div> <div>Exceeds max bolus XX.XX U.</div> <div>No bolus delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	The audio bolus exceeds the bolus limit (xx.xx units in this example) you set and saved in your pump. Audio bolus delivery is currently stopped.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. You may need to adjust the limit that is stored in your pump.
<div>Warning</div> <div>Exceeds max 2 Hr XX U.</div> <div>No delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div>⚠ PUMP WARNING ⚠</div> <div>Exceeds max 2Hr XX U.</div> <div>No delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	Combined basal and bolus delivery exceeds the 2-hour delivery limit (xx units in this example) you set and saved in your pump. Insulin delivery is currently stopped.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. You may need to adjust the limit that is stored in your pump.
<div>Warning</div> <div>Exceeds max TDD XXX U.</div> <div>No delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div>⚠ PUMP WARNING ⚠</div> <div>Exceeds max TDD XXX.XX U.</div> <div>No delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	The bolus exceeds the Total Daily Dose (TDD) limit (xxx.xx units in this example) you set and saved in your pump. All insulin delivery is currently stopped. Any Combo bolus or Temp Basal is temporarily suspended.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. You may need to adjust the limit that is stored in your pump. If the Warning is not confirmed by the time your pump clock passes midnight, the message will continue to be displayed, but any Combo Bolus or Temp Basal that is currently suspended will resume.

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUGH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

PUMP DISPLAY	METER REMOTE DISPLAY	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div>Warning</div> <div>Low cartridge XX U or less left.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div> PUMP WARNING </div> <div>Low cartridge. XX U or less left.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	The insulin units remaining in your pump cartridge are less than the warning level (xx units in this example) you set and saved in your pump. Insulin deliveries will continue until the Empty Cartridge alarm goes off.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. Replace the insulin cartridge in your pump.
<div>Warning</div> <div>Exceeds max basal XX.XX U/Hr.</div> <div>No basal delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div> PUMP WARNING </div> <div>Exceeds max basal XX.XX U/Hr</div> <div>No basal delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	Basal delivery (or a Temp Basal) exceeds the basal limit (xx.xx units in this example) you set and saved in your pump. Basal delivery is currently stopped.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. You may need to adjust the limit that is stored in your pump or adjust the Temp Basal.
<div>Warning</div> <div>Delivery canceled due to low cartridge.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div> PUMP WARNING </div> <div>Delivery canceled due to low cartridge.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	Bolus delivery will exceed the insulin units remaining in your pump cartridge. Bolus delivery has been canceled.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. Replace the insulin cartridge on your pump.
<div>Warning</div> <div>No cartridge detected.</div> <div>Delivery disabled.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div> PUMP WARNING </div> <div>No cartridge detected.</div> <div>Delivery disabled.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	There is no insulin cartridge in your pump. All insulin delivery is currently stopped.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. Install a new insulin cartridge and prime it.
<div>Warning</div> <div>Pump is not primed. No delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	<div> PUMP WARNING </div> <div>Pump is not primed. No delivery.</div> <div>Confirm</div>	Your pump is not primed. All insulin delivery is currently stopped.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. Disconnect and then re-prime your pump.







## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUGH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

PUMP DISPLAY	METER REMOTE DISPLAY	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div> <b>Warning</b>            Bolus delivery canceled by user button press.            Delivered:            X.XX U of X.XX U  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	<div> <b>PUMP WARNING</b>            Bolus delivery canceled by user button press.            Delivered:            X.XX U of X.XX U  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	<p>The bolus was canceled because you pressed a button on your meter remote or pump while the bolus was being delivered. The number of insulin units delivered (x.xx of x.xx units in this example) before the bolus was canceled appears at the bottom of the screen.</p>	<p>Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning.</p>
<div> <b>Warning</b>            Bolus canceled.            Move devices closer, or change channel.            Delivered:            X.XX U of XX.XX U  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	<div> <b>PUMP WARNING</b>            Bolus canceled.            Move devices closer, or change channel.            Delivered:            XX.XX U of XX.XX U  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	<p>The bolus was canceled because RF communication was lost during bolus delivery, and then re-established.</p>	<p>Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Warning. Make sure your meter remote and pump are within RF range, and/or try troubleshooting the RF connection with Customer Service at 999-999-9999 using the RF Test feature on your meter remote. Please refer to your pump display to see how many insulin units were delivered (xx.xx of xx.xx units in this example) before the bolus was canceled. You will still be able to deliver insulin directly from your pump or as an insulin injection.</p>

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUGH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

PUMP DISPLAY	METER REMOTE DISPLAY	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div> <b>ALARM</b>  <b>CALL SERVICE</b>            No delivery.            XXX-XXXX            Remove battery to silence the alarm.         </div>	<div> <b>PUMP ALARM</b>  <b>CALL CUSTOMER SERVICE</b>            No delivery.            XX-XXXX            Remove pump battery to silence the alarm.         </div>	There is a problem with your pump hardware or software. All insulin delivery is currently stopped.	Press <b>OK</b> on your pump to confirm the Alarm and silence it for the next 30 minutes. Remove your pump battery to completely silence the alarm. Call Customer Service at 999-999-9999 immediately. To clear the alarm from your meter remote, you must turn the meter remote off and then back on.
<div> <b>ALARM</b>  <b>AUTO-OFF</b>            No delivery.            No button presses in last XX hours.  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	<div> <b>PUMP ALARM</b>  <b>AUTO-OFF</b>            No delivery.            No button presses in last XX hours.  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	There were no button presses on your pump or meter remote within the allowable Auto-off time limit (xx hours in this example) you set and saved in your pump. All insulin delivery is currently suspended.	Press <b>OK</b> on your meter remote or <b>OK</b> on your pump to confirm the Alarm. Once confirmed, the No Prime Warning is triggered.
<div> <b>ALARM</b>  <b>EMPTY CARTRIDGE</b>            No delivery.            Replace cartridge.  <b>Suspend</b>  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	<div> <b>PUMP ALARM</b>  <b>EMPTY CARTRIDGE</b>            No delivery.            Replace cartridge.  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	The insulin cartridge in your pump is empty. All insulin delivery is currently stopped.	Press <b>OK</b> on your meter remote or <b>OK</b> on your pump to confirm the Alarm. Replace the insulin cartridge in your pump. You also have the option to suspend insulin delivery from your pump.
<div> <b>ALARM</b>  <b>OCCCLUSION DETECTED</b>            No delivery.  <b>Suspend</b>  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	<div> <b>PUMP ALARM</b>  <b>OCCCLUSION DETECTED</b>            No delivery.  <b>Confirm</b> </div>	An occlusion was detected. All insulin delivery is currently stopped.	Press <b>OK</b> on your meter remote or <b>OK</b> on your pump to confirm the Alarm. You also have the option to suspend insulin delivery from your pump. Disconnect and re-prime to clear the occlusion.

## CHAPTER 6 - TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM

PUMP DISPLAY	METER REMOTE DISPLAY	INDICATES	WHAT TO DO
<div> <b>ALARM</b>  <b>REPLACE BATTERY</b>            No delivery.  <div>Remove battery to silence the alarm.</div> </div>	<div> <b>PUMP ALARM</b>  <b>REPLACE PUMP BATTERY</b>            No delivery.  <div>Remove pump battery to silence the alarm.</div> </div>	Your pump battery has only enough power for about another three minutes of use. All insulin delivery is currently stopped.	Replace your pump battery immediately.
<div> <b>Alert</b>            Your active basal program is empty.            0.000U/Hr  <div>Confirm Basal Menu</div> </div>	<div> <b>Pump Alert</b>            Your active basal program is empty.            0.000 U/Hr  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	The active basal program is empty.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Alert. Or, highlight “Basal Menu” on your pump to go to the Basal Menu screen where you can make adjustments to your active basal program.
<div> <b>Alert</b>  <b>LOW BG</b>            Treat low BG.            No bolus recommended.            Monitor BG.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<div> <b>Pump Alert</b>  <b>LOW BG</b>            Treat low BG.            No bolus recommended.            Monitor BG.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	The Actual BG value you entered on the ezCarb or ezBG Bolus screen is below 70 mg/dL. A bolus is not recommended.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Alert. Treat a LOW BG immediately according to your health care professional's recommendations.
<div> <b>Alert</b>  <b>HIGH BG</b>            Treat high BG.            Check site.            Check ketones.            Monitor BG.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	<div> <b>Pump Alert</b>  <b>HIGH BG</b>            Treat high BG.            Check site.            Check ketones.            Monitor BG.  <div>Confirm</div> </div>	The Actual BG value you entered on the ezCarb or ezBG Bolus screen is above 250 mg/dL.	Press  on your meter remote or  on your pump to confirm the Alert. Treat a HIGH BG immediately according to your health care professional's recommendations.

## CHAPTER 7 - ONETOUCH® SYMPHONY™ SYSTEM COMMUNICATION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Separation Distance

Because there are many devices that use RF technology, it is possible to experience communication interference between your pump and meter remote from other RF devices. Examples of devices that use RF technology and may cause communication interference with your OneTouch® Symphony™ System include cell phones, baby monitors, cordless phones and wireless Local Area Network (LAN) routers.

The OneTouch® Symphony™ System is intended for use in an electromagnetic environment in which radiated RF disturbances are controlled. The user of the OneTouch® Symphony™ System can help prevent electromagnetic interference by maintaining a minimum distance between portable and mobile RF communications equipment (transmitters) and the OneTouch® Symphony™ System as recommended in the table below. For devices with output power greater than what is listed below, please contact Customer Service.

Device Output Power/Frequency	Recommended Separation Distance From Other RF devices		
	150 kHz to 80 MHz	80 MHz to 800 MHz	800 MHz to 2.5 GHz
0.01W	0.4 feet (0.12 meters)	0.4 feet (0.12 meters)	0.8 feet (0.23 meters)
0.1W	1.2 feet (0.37 meters)	1.2 feet (0.37 meters)	2.4 feet (0.74 meters)
1W	3.8 feet (1.17 meters)	3.8 feet (1.17 meters)	7.6 feet (2.33 meters)
10W	12.1 feet (3.69 meters)	12.1 feet (3.69 meters)	24.2 feet (7.38 meters)
100W	38.3 feet (11.67 meters)	38.3 feet (11.67 meters)	76.5 feet (23.33 meters)

**Operating Range** Minimum 3.3 feet (1 meter) obstructed  
Minimum 9.8 feet (3 meters) unobstructed

**Communication Time** Minimum 0.5 seconds (approximately)  
Maximum 10.5 seconds (approximately)

**Frequency Range** 902–928 MHz

**Operating Channels** 16





## *Appendix A: Glossary*





## APPENDIX A: GLOSSARY

### Glossary

**alpha cells** - Alpha cells are found in the pancreas. They produce a hormone called glucagon, which raises BG levels.

**basal rate** - The basal rate is the amount of insulin that is continuously delivered by an insulin pump. It is measured in units per hour (U/Hr). The basal rate usually provides about 40% to 60% of the daily total delivery of insulin.

**beta cells** - Beta cells are found in the pancreas. They produce insulin, which lowers BG levels. In type 1 diabetes mellitus, the beta cells are destroyed, so the body can no longer produce insulin.

**blood glucose (BG) levels** - BG levels are the measure of how much glucose (sugar) is in the blood. The normal level is about 70–110 mg/dL.

**bolus** - A bolus is the amount of insulin delivered at one time, usually before a meal or when BG is high.

**cannula** - A cannula is a small tube that is inserted into the body. Some infusion sets are designed so that only the cannula remains in the body and the needle used for insertion is removed.

**dawn phenomenon** - More insulin may be required in the early morning hours of normal sleep to counteract the release of several hormones that act to increase BG levels. This increased need for insulin is known as dawn phenomenon and may cause a person with diabetes to have a high BG level in the morning upon waking. Basal rate delivery by the Animas® Insulin Pump can be programmed to compensate for dawn phenomenon.

**diabetes** - Diabetes is a complex disease in which the body cannot maintain healthy BG levels because either enough insulin cannot be produced or the body cannot appropriately use insulin. In type 1 diabetes, the body no longer produces insulin and in type 2 diabetes, the body cannot use insulin properly.

**diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)** - DKA results when there is not enough insulin available to help glucose enter the cells where it is used for energy. The body, in turn, burns muscle and fat for energy. A waste product of fat burning is ketones. Ketones accumulate in the blood and then pass through the urine and lungs. This condition can be identified by urine and/or blood tests. DKA usually requires hospitalization and can be fatal if not promptly treated.

**gastroparesis** - Gastroparesis is a complication of diabetes that causes delayed emptying of the stomach, resulting in unpredictable swings in BG levels.

**gestational diabetes** - Gestational diabetes is a form of diabetes that may develop during pregnancy. In some women, certain hormones normally produced by the body during pregnancy can result in unusually high BG levels. If the body cannot produce enough insulin, this can lead to hyperglycemia and may require treatment with insulin. Gestational diabetes usually ends when the baby is born, but many mothers who experience gestational diabetes may later develop Type 2 diabetes.

**glucagon** - Glucagon is a hormone produced by the alpha cells in the pancreas. It causes BG levels to rise.

**glucose** - Glucose is a carbohydrate and the body's most important source of energy. It is produced from digested food, by the normal action of the liver, and is carried by the blood throughout the body.

**hyperglycemia** - Hyperglycemia is also known as high blood glucose. It occurs when BG levels rise above 180 mg/dL, and the body does not have enough or cannot use insulin to process food. Symptoms of hyperglycemia include nausea, vomiting, muscle and joint aches, blurred vision, excessive thirst, and frequent urination. Over time, weight loss can result. Hyperglycemia can occur even while using an insulin pump and can lead to diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) if untreated.

## APPENDIX A: GLOSSARY

***hypoglycemia*** - Hypoglycemia is also known as low blood glucose. It occurs when BG levels drop to below 70 mg/dL. This can happen if a person with diabetes has taken too much insulin or has exercised more than usual. Symptoms of hypoglycemia include dizziness, shakiness, rapid heartbeat, sudden hunger, cold or clammy skin, fuzzy vision, confusion, mood changes, and tingling or numbness in the hands, arms, tongue, or lips. Hypoglycemia can occur even while using an insulin pump, and if left untreated, can lead to unconsciousness and diabetic coma.

***infrared*** - Infrared is a wireless means by which the Animas® Insulin Pump communicates with external devices using an optical signal which is invisible to the human eye.

***infusion set*** - An infusion set consists of a length of thin plastic tubing (available in various lengths) with a Luer-lock connector at one end, and at the other end, a very small cannula that is placed under the skin. It is connected to the insulin pump and used to deliver insulin to the body.

***infusion site*** - The infusion site is the place on the body where the infusion set needle is inserted under the skin.

***insulin*** - Insulin is a hormone produced by the beta cells in the pancreas. Insulin is needed by the body to regulate the production and use of glucose.

***insulin limits*** - Insulin limits are a programmable feature of the Animas® Insulin Pump. After consulting with your health care team, you can use the Advanced Setup menu to program maximum limits for basal rate delivery, bolus delivery, and total daily delivery.

***insulin pump*** - An insulin pump is a small, battery-powered device that mechanically pumps measured amounts of insulin through an infusion set into the body. THE PUMP IS NOT AUTOMATIC. You program and control it, and you must perform four to six BG tests daily to ensure delivery of appropriate amounts of insulin by the pump.

***ketones*** - Ketones, or ketone bodies, are substances produced by normal liver activity, and used by muscle tissue. In uncontrolled diabetes, the process becomes unbalanced and ketones can accumulate in the blood, pass through the urine and ultimately result in diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA).

***LCD - Liquid crystal display*** - This is the kind of display screen used on the Animas® Insulin Pump. What makes the Animas® Insulin Pump LCD display screen different from others is its graphic display. Graphic displays make it easier to change languages and are more efficient in using space.

***Luer-lock*** - A Luer-lock, or Luer connection, is a standardized, specially threaded fitting used to connect the infusion set to the pump's insulin cartridge.

***mg/dL*** - mg/dL is the unit used to measure BG levels. It is the abbreviation for milligrams of glucose per deciliter of blood. To convert mg/dL to mmol/L, divide by 18 or multiply by 0.055.

***mmol/L*** - mmol/L is an alternative unit used to measure BG levels. It is the abbreviation for millimoles/liter. To convert mmol/L to mg/dL, multiply by 18 or divide by 0.055.

***occlusion*** - Occlusion means “blockage.” The Animas® Insulin Pump is designed to be able to sense when delivery of the insulin is being blocked for some reason. The pump will automatically stop delivering insulin and give an alarm to alert you to clear the occlusion and re-start the pump.

***o-ring*** - Both the cartridge and the battery cap contain an “o” shaped ring made of a soft material that functions as a seal when compressed. O-rings operate properly only if the surface is free of defects (cuts, scratches, abrasion).

***pancreas*** - The pancreas is a glandular organ just behind the stomach, next to the liver. It produces digestive enzymes used to break down proteins in food. It contains alpha cells, which produce glucagon, and beta cells, which produce insulin.

---

**APPENDIX A: GLOSSARY**

---

***stress hormones*** - Stress hormones (or “counter-regulatory” hormones) are released by the body in times of intense physical or emotional stress. These hormones cause the body to release glucose. If the glucose is not used as energy, hyperglycemia and ketoacidosis can result.

***subcutaneous*** - Subcutaneous means beneath the skin. The infusion set needle is placed subcutaneously.

***type 1 diabetes*** - Type 1 diabetes results from destruction of the beta cells in the pancreas. People with type 1 diabetes mellitus must use insulin to regulate their BG levels.

***type 2 diabetes*** - Type 2 diabetes usually occurs in people 40 years or older. People with type 2 diabetes have a progressive loss of beta cells over time. They can sometimes regulate their BG levels by following an individual meal plan, exercising and taking antidiabetic pills. They frequently require insulin for optimal BG control.

---

## APPENDIX A: GLOSSARY



***Index***



## INDEX

### A

Active basal program empty alert ..... 75  
 Adding logbook entries ..... 143  
 Advanced bolus ..... 28, 50, 61  
 Advanced features, insulin pump ..... 49  
 Advanced features, meter remote ..... 110, 114  
 AICD ..... 4  
 Air bubbles ..... 8  
 Aircraft ..... 6  
 Alarms, insulin pump ..... 18, 75  
 Alarms, meter remote ..... 109, 119, 167  
 Alarms, meter remote  
   and insulin pump ..... 109, 119, 211  
 Alarm history ..... 41  
 Alerts, insulin pump ..... 19, 75  
 Alerts, meter remote ..... 109, 119  
 Alerts, meter remote  
   and insulin pump ..... 109, 119, 211  
 Alternate site testing procedure ..... 128, 130  
 Amusement parks ..... 6  
 Audio bolus ..... 7, 18, 49, 59  
 Audio bolus delivery step size ..... 49  
 Auto-dim ..... 12  
 Auto-off alarm ..... 84, 215  
 Auto-off feature ..... 52  
 Average, all results ..... 153  
 Average, by exercise ..... 154  
 Average, by time of day ..... 154

### B

Backlight/button, meter remote ..... 105, 107  
 Basal delivery suspended warning ..... 78, 211  
 Basal history ..... 42  
 Basal program features ..... 29  
 Basal program, reviewing ..... 32  
 Basal program, temp basal ..... 33  
 Basic set-up, insulin pump ..... 17  
 Basic set-up, meter remote ..... 109, 110  
 Batteries, insulin pump ..... 8, 16  
 Batteries, meter remote ..... 164  
 Battery cap, insulin pump ..... 16, 73  
 Battery cap/vent, insulin pump ..... 16  
 Battery insertion, insulin pump ..... 16  
 Battery insertion, meter remote ..... 164  
 Beep, insulin pump ..... 13, 37  
 Beep, meter remote ..... 113, 119  
 BG correction calculator ..... see ezBG  
 BG/check reminder, insulin pump ..... 69  
 BG/check reminder, meter remote ..... 190

BG targets/ranges, insulin pump ..... 55  
 BG targets/ranges, meter remote ..... 117  
 BG test result screen, meter remote ..... 134, 136  
 Bolus delivery speed ..... 50, 70  
 Bolus, history ..... 39  
 Bolus, combo, insulin pump ..... 67  
 Bolus, combo, meter remote ..... 196  
 Bolus, ezBG, insulin pump ..... 65  
 Bolus, ezBG, meter remote ..... 198  
 Bolus, ezCarb, insulin pump ..... 61  
 Bolus, ezCarb, meter remote ..... 191  
 Bolus, normal, insulin pump ..... 27  
 Bolus, normal, meter remote ..... 189  
 Buttons, insulin pump ..... 11  
 Buttons, meter remote ..... 105

### C

Cable, USB for meter remote ..... 157  
 Calculator feature, insulin pump ..... 61, 65  
 Calculator feature, meter remote ..... 116, 123  
 Calculator set-up, meter remote  
   ..... 116, 123, 178, 200  
 Call service alarm ..... 84, 215  
 Cancel a bolus, insulin pump ..... 27  
 Cancel a bolus, meter remote ..... 189  
 Carb calculator ..... see ezCarb  
 Carbon-zinc batteries ..... 8, 15  
 Cardiac catheter ..... 4  
 Carton contents ..... iv, v  
 Cartridge ..... 6, 8, 20  
 Cell phones ..... 8  
 Changing the battery, insulin pump ..... 16  
 Changing the batteries, meter remote ..... 164  
 Changing the cartridge ..... 21  
 Cleaning your insulin pump ..... 8, 73  
 Cleaning your meter remote and lancing device ... 163  
 Clear program basal segments alert ..... 77  
 Coding the meter remote ..... 126, 160  
 Colonoscopy ..... 4  
 Combo bolus, insulin pump ..... 46, 67  
 Combo bolus, meter remote ..... 196  
 Comment, adding to BG test result ..... 139  
 Comment, editing or deleting ..... 142  
 Comments, exercise ..... 141  
 Comments, food ..... 140  
 Comments, health ..... 141  
 Confirmation window ..... 105, 134, 161  
 Connecting to a PC, meter remote ..... 157  
 Contrast/button, insulin pump ..... 11, 12, 51  
 Contrast, meter remote ..... 109, 113



**INDEX**

- Control solution ..... 159  
 Control solution, result range ..... 161  
 Control solution, storing ..... 163  
 Control solution, testing ..... 159  
 Correction bolus ..... see ezBG  
 Cradle connector ..... 105  
 Customize set-up, meter remote ..... 109, 112
- D**
- Damage, insulin pump ..... 8, 16  
 Data port ..... 105, 157  
 Date format, meter remote ..... 109, 113  
 Date setting, insulin pump ..... 17  
 Date setting, meter remote ..... 112  
 Daylight saving time, insulin pump ..... 18  
 Daylight saving time, meter remote ..... 112  
 Dehydration ..... 91, 93, 135  
 Discard date, control solution ..... 163  
 Discard date, test strips ..... 163  
 Display check, meter remote ..... 126, 160  
 Display contrast, insulin pump ..... 11, 12, 51  
 Display contrast, meter remote ..... 109, 113  
 Display language, insulin pump ..... 13, 51  
 Display language, meter remote ..... 109, 111  
 Display timeout setting, insulin pump ..... 51  
 Disposal, insulin pump ..... 74  
 Disposal, lancet and test strips ..... 137  
 Dka, ..... 3, 90, 91  
 Download, insulin pump ..... 13, 39  
 Download, meter remote ..... 157  
 Drop of blood ..... 129, 132
- E**
- Editing comments ..... 142  
 Editing logbook entries ..... 147  
 Edit mode ..... 11  
 EKG ..... 4  
 Electromagnetic fields ..... 3  
 Electromagnets ..... 6  
 Empty cartridge alarm ..... 83, 215  
 Error messages, meter remote ..... 167, 207  
 Exceeds insulin remaining warning ..... 81  
 Exceeds max basal warning ..... 80, 213  
 Exceeds max bolus warning ..... 79, 212  
 Exceeds max TDD warning ..... 80, 212  
 Exercise and sports ..... 93  
 Exercise comments ..... 141  
 Exercise logbook entries ..... 144  
 Expiration date, control solution ..... 163  
 Expiration date, test strips ..... 163  
 Extended bolus ..... see Combo bolus  
 ezBG bolus, insulin pump ..... 65  
 ezBG bolus, meter remote ..... 198  
 ezCarb bolus, insulin pump ..... 61  
 ezCarb bolus, meter remote ..... 191  
 ezManager® software program  
     ..... 13, 17, 18, 29, 39, 49, 61, 122
- F**
- FastFacts® Menu ..... 149  
 Fingertip testing procedure ..... 129  
 Food averages ..... 150, 156  
 Food comments ..... 140  
 Food database ..... 121  
 Food list ..... 121, 146  
 Food logbook entries ..... 146  
 Forearm ..... 128, 130, 132  
 Forearm or palm sampling,  
     important information ..... 128, 132
- G**
- General anesthesia ..... 4  
 Glucose, by meals ..... 151  
 Glucose analysis ..... 151  
 Glucose analysis, average by exercise ..... 154  
 Glucose analysis, average by time of day ..... 154  
 Glucose analysis, average of all results ..... 153  
 Glucose analysis, glucose range info ..... 155  
 Glucose analysis, graph by time of day ..... 153  
 Glucose analysis, graph of all results ..... 152  
 Glucose range, before-meal ..... 155  
 Glucose range, after-meal ..... 155  
 Graph, all results ..... 152  
 Graph, by time of day ..... 153  
 Guarantee, meter remote ..... 172
- H**
- Health comments ..... 141  
 Health logbook entries ..... 145  
 Help, insulin pump ..... 1  
 High BG alert, insulin pump ..... 77, 216  
 High blood glucose ..... 91  
 HIGH CONTROL warning ..... 167  
 HIGH GLUCOSE warning, meter remote ..... 135, 167  
 History feature ..... 39  
 Home screen, insulin pump ..... 13  
 Home screens, meter remote ..... 107, 186

**INDEX**

Hyperglycemia ..... 87, 90, 135  
 Hypoglycemia ..... 56, 85, 128, 135  
 Hypo level, meter remote ..... 116, 149, 156

**I**

Infection, reduce the chance ..... 127  
 Infusion set ..... 22, 25, 88  
 Intended use ..... ii  
 Insulin limits ..... 50  
 Insulin on board (IOB), insulin pump ..... 56, 70  
 Insulin on Board (IOB),  
   meter remote ..... 199, 200  
 Insulin on board (IOB), setting ..... 56  
 Insulin sensitivity factor (ISF), insulin pump ..... 54  
 Insulin sensitivity (IS) factor, meter remote ..... 117  
 Insulin to carb (I:C) ratio, insulin pump ..... 53  
 Insulin to carb (I:C) ratio, meter remote ..... 116  
 Intimacy ..... 94  
 IR (infra-red) ..... 13

**L**

Lab results, comparing with meter remote results .. 171  
 Lancet, disposal ..... 137  
 Lancet, inserting in lancing device ..... 129, 131  
 Lancet, protective disk ..... 127, 129, 131, 137  
 Lancing ..... 129, 130  
 Lancing device and cap ..... 127, 129, 131  
 Lancing device, depth setting ..... 127, 129, 131  
 Lancing device,  
   OneTouch® AST™ Clear Cap ..... 127, 131, 132  
 Language setup, insulin pump ..... 13, 51  
 Language setup, meter remote ..... 109, 111  
 Laser surgery on the eye ..... 4  
 LED ..... 110, 120  
 LED mode ..... 120  
 Locked buttons, insulin pump ..... 13  
 Locked buttons, meter remote ..... 109, 110, 118  
 Locked feature, insulin pump ..... 13  
 Locked feature, meter remote ..... 110, 118  
 Logbook feature, meter remote ..... 150  
 Logbook entries ..... 143  
 Logbook entries, editing or deleting ..... 147  
 Logbook entries, exercise ..... 144  
 Logbook entries, food ..... 146  
 Logbook entries, health ..... 145  
 Logbook entries, pump ..... 147  
 LOW BATTERY alarm, meter remote ..... 164, 169  
 LOW BATTERY warning, meter remote ..... 164, 169  
 Low battery warning, insulin pump ..... 16, 79

Low BG alert, insulin pump ..... 76, 216  
 Low cartridge ..... 60  
 Low cartridge warning ..... 79, 213  
 Low cartridge warning setting ..... 52  
 LOW CONTROL warning ..... 167  
 LOW GLUCOSE warning, meter remote ..... 135, 167

**M**

Magnets ..... 3  
 Main menu screen, insulin pump ..... 14  
 Main menu screen, meter remote ..... 108  
 Maintenance, insulin pump ..... 73  
 Meter remote alerts ..... 110, 119, 211  
 Meter remote Home screens ..... 107, 186  
 Meter remote notification messages ..... 207  
 Meter remote warning messages ..... 167, 207, 211  
 Meal schedule ..... 110, 114  
 Meter remote status, meter remote ..... 205  
 mg/dL ..... 105, 134, 178  
 MRI ..... 3  
 Multiple basal programs ..... 29, 32, 70

**N**

No cartridge detected,  
   deliveries disabled warning ..... 78, 213  
 No prime, no delivery warning ..... 81, 213  
 Normal bolus, insulin pump ..... 27  
 Normal bolus, meter remote ..... 189  
 Notification messages,  
   meter remote ..... 207  
 Nuclear stress test ..... 4

**O**

Occlusion alarm ..... 82, 215  
 Occlusion sensitivity setting ..... 52  
 O-ring ..... 16, 21

**P**

Pacemaker ..... 4  
 Pairing ..... ii, 58, 71, 175  
 Pairing procedure ..... 176  
 Palm ..... 128, 130, 132  
 PC communication mode, meter remote ..... 157  
 Precautions, insulin pump ..... 6  
 Primary vent ..... 12  
 Prime history ..... 41  
 Prime/rewind ..... 14

**INDEX**

Priming the pump .....	22	Set-up, customize, meter remote .....	109, 112
Programming buttons, insulin pump .....	11	SmartChip port .....	105
Pump alarms .....	75, 211	Sounds setting/changing, insulin pump .....	18
Pump alerts .....	75, 211	Start-up screens, meter remote .....	107, 126, 160
Pump history .....	39	Status feature, insulin pump .....	45
Pump history, alarms .....	41	Status feature, meter remote .....	203
Pump history, basal .....	42	Storing your control solution .....	163
Pump history, bolus .....	39	Storing your meter remote .....	163
Pump history, prime .....	41	Storing your test strips .....	163
Pump history, suspend .....	42	Supply reordering .....	vi
Pump history, total daily dose (TDD) .....	40	Suspend (temp basal/combo bolus canceled) alert. .	76
Pump Home screen, insulin pump .....	13	Suspend history .....	42
Pump Home screen, meter remote .....	185	Suspend insulin delivery .....	37
Pump ID on your meter remote display .....	185	Suspend warning .....	78, 211
Pump logbook entries .....	147	Swimming .....	93
Pump status, insulin pump .....	45	Symbols, insulin pump .....	9
Pump status, meter remote .....	203	Symbols, meter remote .....	106, 172
Pump warnings .....	75, 211	System status feature, meter remote .....	203
		System communication technical specifications ..	217

**R**

Radio Frequency (RF) .....	ii, iii
Radiology equipment .....	3
Rechargeable batteries, insulin pump .....	8, 15
Reminders .....	61, 68
Repeated unexpected BG test results .....	135
Replace battery alarm, insulin pump .....	83, 216
Replacement pump .....	8
Resume insulin delivery .....	38
RF activation .....	i, 58, 71, 175, 180, 182
RF channel .....	175, 184
RF communication .....	ii, 106, 173, 175, 183
RF interference .....	ii, iii, 183
RF on/off, insulin pump .....	175, 176, 182
RF on/off, meter remote .....	175, 180
RF test .....	183
RF welders .....	3
Roller-coasters .....	6

**S**

Safety information, insulin pump .....	7
Schedule, meal .....	110, 114
Serial number, insulin pump .....	9, 47, 177, 204
Serial number, meter remote .....	177, 205
Setting the time and date, insulin pump .....	17
Setting the time and date, meter remote .....	111
Set-up, advanced features, insulin pump .....	49
Set-up, advanced features, meter remote .....	114
Set-up, basic, insulin pump .....	17
Set-up, basic, meter remote .....	109, 110

**T**

Tamper resistant (Locked) feature, insulin pump ....	13
Technical and clinical help .....	1
Technical specifications, insulin pump .....	100
Technical specifications, meter remote .....	172
Temp basal .....	33, 35, 37, 40, 46
Temp basal minimum rate alert .....	76
Temperature .....	8, 134, 159, 172
Temporary basal feature .....	see Temp basal
Temperature error .....	169
Test strip port .....	105, 126, 160
Testing procedure .....	125
Test strip, applying drop of blood .....	132
Test strip, care of .....	163
Test strip, confirmation window .....	105, 134, 161
Test strip, contact bars .....	105, 126, 160
Test strip, disposal .....	137
Time format, insulin pump .....	17
Time format, meter remote .....	109, 113
Time out, insulin pump .....	14, 51
Time setting, insulin pump .....	13, 17
Time setting, meter remote .....	109, 111
Total daily dose (TDD) history .....	40
Traveling .....	93
Troubleshooting, insulin pump .....	75, 85
Troubleshooting, meter remote .....	167
Troubleshooting, system .....	207, 211
Turning meter remote display off .....	107
Turning meter remote display on .....	107

**INDEX****U**

Unexpected BG test results .....	135
Unit of measure .....	105, 134, 161, 178
Unpairing .....	179
Unpairing procedure .....	179
Upload, insulin pump .....	7
USB cable for meter remote .....	157
USB data port .....	105, 157

**W**

Wake up screen, insulin pump .....	13
Warning cue, meter remote .....	110, 119
Warning messages, insulin pump .....	75
Warning messages, meter remote .....	167, 207
Warning messages, meter remote and insulin pump .....	212
Warranty, insulin pump .....	99
Waterproof .....	6, 8, 73

**X**

X-rays .....	5
--------------	---

## Patent information

The system described herein is covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents: TBD. Use of the monitoring device described herein is protected under U.S. patents TBD. Purchase of the monitoring device described herein does not act to grant a use license under this patent. Such a license is granted only when the device is used with OneTouch® Ultra® Test Strips. No test strip supplier other than LifeScan, Inc. is authorized to grant such a license. The accuracy of results generated with LifeScan meter remotes using test strips manufactured by anyone other than LifeScan has not been evaluated by LifeScan.

Manufactured for Animas® Corporation



200 Lawrence Drive  
West Chester, PA 19380  
Info (U.S. only): 999-999-9999 (999-9999)  
999-999-9999

Customer Service is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.  
Service (U.S., Canada & Puerto Rico):  
999-999-9999 (999-9999)

Visit us at [www.animascorp.com](http://www.animascorp.com)

CAUTION: Federal (U.S.) law restricts this device to sale by, or on the order of a physician.

© 2008, Animas® Corporation. All rights reserved.

Animas® Insulin Pump and ezManager® are trademarks of Animas® Corporation. Covered by U.S. patent 6,656,148, other patents pending.

Glucagon Emergency Kit® is a trademark of Eli Lilly and Company.

Energizer® is a trademark of the Eveready Company.

Duracell® is a trademark of the Gillette Company.

P/N: 410-106-00 Rev. A

Rev. date 03/11/2008